Self Educator Series

EDITED BY
JOHN ADAMS. M.A. B.Sc.

LATIN

W. A. EDWARD. M. A.

THE SELF-EDUCATOR SERIES

EDITED BY

JOHN ADAMS, M.A., B.Sc.

RECTOR OF THE FREE CHURCH TRAINING COLLEGE, GLASGOW

LATIN

BY

W. A. EDWARD, M.A.

NEW YORK
THOMAS Y. CROWELL & CO.
426 AND 428 WEST BROADWAY
1901

THE SELF-EDUCATOR

IN

LATIN

BY

W. A. EDWARD, M.A.

EDITED BY

JOHN ADAMS, M.A., B.Sc.

RECTOR OF THE FREE CHURCH TRAINING COLLEGE, GLASGOW

NEW YORK

THOMAS Y. CROWELL & CO.

426 AND 428 WEST BROADWAY

1901

GENERAL NOTE

THE object of this Series is indicated by its title, "The Self-Educator". It is hoped that by means of these books the most isolated student will be able, without other aid, to ground himself in the various subjects dealt with. Every care has been taken to make each book complete in itself. Hints are given by following which further progress may be made in the various studies.

INTRODUCTION.

It is easy to see why we learn living languages like French and German. We readily admit the advantage of being able to speak French, to write French, and to read French. Now even classical scholars never speak Latin; they almost never write Latin; but they do read it. It is true that students are taught how to write in Latin, but this is not in order that they may use it in correspondence or in writing down their thoughts, but for two quite different but thoroughly satisfactory reasons. The first is that Latin is such an exact language that the mere learning of how to express our thoughts in that language is a training in exact thinking. If a scholar is in doubt as to whether an English sentence conveys a clear meaning he throws it into Latin. Any inaccuracy becomes clear in the process. The second reason is that by writing Latin we increase our power of reading Latin. It is for this reason that in the following pages you will find so much work in turning English into Latin. The object of this book is not to teach you to write Latin, but to read it. Yet it is found that the best way to understand how the Romans expressed themselves is by trying to express ourselves in the same way.

A very little experience will show you that it is

turn back an Exercise or two and you are sure to find it. This turning back and running your eye over former Exercises is *not* a waste of time.

The best way to use this book is to work right through it, exercise by exercise. Thus, write out Exercise 1 (*a*), then turn to Part II. and correct your version before you begin 1 (*b*). Between 1 (*a*) and 1 (*b*) you should read over once more the whole of Lesson I., and so with all the lessons.

For thorough study constant revision is necessary. As soon as you have completed five lessons, then, revise; as soon as you have finished the next five, revise again, and so on to the end of the book. An excellent method of revision is to use Part II. as the Exercise, and Part I. as the Key. Thus, suppose you are revising Exercises 6 to 10 you will first read carefully over all that is said in Lesson VI. in Part I. Then, turning to Part II., take Exercise 6 (*b*) there, turn it into English and then compare with 6 (*b*) in Part I. Next, turning back to Part II., take Exercise 6 (*a*), turn it into Latin and compare your work with 6 (*a*) in Part I.

It may strike you as an objection that in this way of revising you often remember exactly how a particular exercise runs. This is not a defect, but rather an advantage. The more you can thus remember the better.

In the case of those students who are unaccustomed to grammatical form, and find the English-Latin exercises very difficult, the following plan may be recommended for a first reading. Read Lesson I., then work Exercise 1 (*a*). Turn to Part II. and

correct your version of 1 (*a*). Then, instead of turning back to Part I., keep at Part II., and turn 1 (*b*) there into English, afterwards correcting your version by comparing with 1 (*b*) in Part I. By doing this with all the Lessons you will get right through the book the first time without doing anything but Latin-English. You could then go through the book working in the ordinary way—using Part II. as the Key throughout.

Those who go through the book in the regular way, revising every five lessons as suggested, might make a final revision by treating all the Exercises as English-Latin—just the reverse of what has been suggested in the preceding paragraph.

It is clear that the book may be used in various ways according to the needs of the student, the essential point about them all being that they can be followed without any other help than is given in the book itself.

CONTENTS

PART II.

PART I.

PRELIMINARY CHAPTER.

We shall begin with a few words about the Latin Alphabet, and the sounds which its letters represented.

Alphabet.

1. The Latin Alphabet as written now has no **w**.
2. The other letters are the same as in English.
3. Sometimes **j** is not used, and **i** is employed instead. You may write *jaciō*, I throw, or *iaciō*.
4. **k** is very seldom used in Latin.

Pronunciation.

Pronounce the letters like the English ones, but observe the following rules :—

Vowels.

a, e, i, o, u are the Vowels in Latin. The rest of the letters are Consonants.

a is pronounced always like the *a* sound in *far* or *fat*.

ā. When marked thus dwell on the sound : this is called *a* long, as in *far*. In Latin *a* is never pronounced like *a* in *fate*.

ă. When marked thus do not dwell on the sound : this is called *a* short, as in *fat*.

ē, that is *e* long, pronounce like *a* in *may*. Thus *me*, the Latin for "me," is pronounced like English *may*.

ĕ, that is *e* short, is pronounced like *e* in *bet*.

Note.—**e** is always sounded, *e.g.*, *lĕgĕrĕ*, the Latin for "to collect," three syllables.

ī, that is *i* long, is pronounced like *e* in *see*.

ĭ, that is *i* short, is pronounced like *i* in *bit*.

Thus *servi*, the Latin for "slaves," is pronounced *servee*.

In *rĭgeō*, the Latin for "I am stiff," the first syllable is pronounced like the English *rig*.

ō is pronounced almost exactly like *o* in *no*: *mos*, custom.

ŏ is pronounced like *o* in *not*: *bŏnus*, good.

ū is pronounced like *u* in *rule*: *domūs*, houses.

ŭ is pronounced like *u* in *put*—that is to say, it is not dwelt on so long: *domŭs*, a house.

Diphthongs.

ae, au, oe, ui in Latin are called Diphthongs.

ae is pronounced like *ay* in *day*: *mensae*, of a table, pronounce *mens-ay*.

au is pronounced like *ow* in *endow*: *aureus*, golden, pronounce *ow-rĕ-us*.

oe is pronounced like *a* in *fate*: *proelium*, a battle, pronounce *pray-li-um*.

ui is pronounced like *wee*: *cui*, to whom, pronounce *kwee*.

Consonants.

g is always like *g* in *gun*: *regis*, of a king.

c is always like *c* in *cat*: *condiciōnēs*, terms, pronounce *condikiones*.

j is pronounced like *y* in *yacht*: *abjiciō*, I throw away,

pronounce *ab-yicio* (**i** before a vowel has a similar pronunciation).

qu is pronounced like *qu* in *queen*: *oblīquus*, slanting, pronounce *o-blee-kwuss*.

gu is pronounced like *gw* in *Gwendoline*: *anguis*, a snake, pronounce *ang-gwis*.

ph, th, ch are pronounced like *p*, *t*, and *k*, respectively. Thus *charta*, a paper or writing, is pronounced *karta*.

The Parts of Speech.

Words are divided into various classes. We talk of Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections; and that we may always know exactly what we mean, we shall set down shortly what we understand by each of these terms.

1. *The Noun.*—Observe these words: *John*, *table*, *whiteness*. The first is the name of a person; the second is the name of a thing; the third is the name of a quality. We may say then,—Any name is a noun. In Latin we sometimes call this the *Substantive*, as naming the substance of anything. We do this to distinguish these from other words which are names of a kind, but only name qualities of the things denoted by the noun, and always go with nouns. Thus, the noun *whiteness* names the quality regarded as existing by itself; the adjective *white* names the quality as existing in something, with the name of which it always goes.

2. *The Adjective.*—The adjective names some quality possessed by the thing named by the noun. Thus, *table* names a certain article of furniture. It has a certain size, shape, etc. If we wish to name these we add an adjective to the noun, *e.g.*, a *wooden* table, a *strong* table.

3. *The Pronoun.*—"John went into the house. *He* met his friend there". What does the word *he* do here?

It stands in place of the name *John*. A pronoun, then, is a word which stands in place of a noun.

4. *The Verb.*—"John ran along the road." "John chased a hare." "John now sleeps." In each of these sentences we talk of somebody doing something, or being in a certain state. The somebody is named by a noun (the Subject); the doing or state is described by a verb (the Predicate). Thus *ran*, *chased*, *sleeps* are verbs.

5. *The Adverb.*—"John ran quickly." "John chased a hare eagerly." "John sleeps peacefully." In each case here we have a word (*quickly*, *eagerly*, *peacefully*) telling us something about the action or state marked by the verb. Such a word, used with a verb to describe its action, is called an adverb (Latin *ad*, to, and *verb;* that is, added to a verb).

6. *The Preposition.*—"John ran quickly . . . his work." This is a broken sentence. *His work* is unconnected. Put in the word *to* before *his*. Now the sentence gives complete sense. This little word joins *work* to *ran quickly*, and shows the connection between them. Such a word we call a preposition (Latin *prae*, before, and *positus*, placed—a word placed before a noun). A preposition, then, is a word which connects words and shows the relation between them.

7. *The Conjunction.*—We have another class of words which connect—conjunctions. These however, unlike prepositions, usually connect sentences. If I wish to make one big sentence out of the three sentences in paragraph 5 I write: "John ran quickly *and* chased a hare eagerly *and* now sleeps peacefully". A conjunction, then, is a word which connects sentences. Occasionally conjunctions connect words, *e.g.*, "John *and* James are sleeping". "*Either* John *or* James is a fool."

8. *The Interjection.*—"Hurrah! John has caught the

hare." In this sentence *Hurrah!* is just an exclamation, a shout. Such a word thrown into the sentence without connection is called an interjection.

No doubt you could go on to tell me a good deal more about these words and their uses, but this is all you must know before studying the following pages. Different people have different ideas on these words, but it is absolutely necessary that for the present you and I should agree to have the same.

The Inflections of Latin.

"England's queen has reigned for sixty years."

"The Queen of England has reigned for sixty years."

You see these two sentences express the same meaning in different ways. In the first sentence to show the connection between *England* and *queen* we add an *'s*, making a slight change in the end of the word. In the second case we connect the two by a preposition, at the same time altering the order. Latin in the great majority of cases uses the first method to show connection. Latin order is consequently almost always different from English.

The *'s* in the first example we call an inflection—a change in the end of a word to show relationship to some other word or words. Such changes are made only in nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs and adverbs. The other parts of speech are never inflected. Latin of course uses prepositions too, but these only help the inflections, and are followed, according to certain rules, by changes in the end of the noun they go with. In English the prepositions have to do all the work, without any help from the endings of words.

The Inflections of Nouns in Latin.

We add various endings to nouns to show their relationship to other words in the sentence. The noun so changed

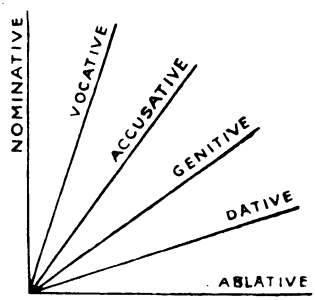
is said to be in a certain *Case*. A list of all the cases of a noun is called the *Declension* of the noun. To decline a noun is to go through all its cases.

We have cases in English, as you know, but we do not always mark them by inflection. In fact we very seldom do so. We generally mark them by a preposition. The following are examples of the inflections found in English nouns and pronouns :—

"John's book is good."
"He struck him."

The first word, *John's*, we say is in the Possessive case. When the person is acting, you observe we use *He*, which is called the Nominative case. The person who receives the action of the verb is named by *him*, which we call the Objective case. The Nominative case is, in one sense, not really a case, because there is no change at the end.

Case is a word which comes from the Latin word *casus*, which means *a falling*. It was applied to these forms of the noun because they were regarded as a falling away from the original form. Thus, if we regard the Nominative case as the upright straight line, as being really not a falling away at all, the other cases in Latin may be represented by sloping lines.



You observe among these names that only one of the English names for the cases occurs, *viz.*, the Nominative.

The Genitive case is usually translated by *of* and the noun. Thus *insulae,* Genitive case, means *of the island.*

The Dative case is usually translated by *to* or *for* and the noun. Thus *insulae*, Dative case, means *to* or *for the island.*

The Ablative case is generally translated by *by*, *with*, *from*, or *in* and the noun. Thus *insulā*, Ablative case, means *from the island ; gladiō*, Ablative case of *gladius*, means *by* or *with the sword ; auctumnō*, Ablative case of *auctumnus*, means *in autumn.*

The Accusative case generally comes after a verb, is closely connected with it, and answers to our English Objective case. Thus, in *Hŏminem interfēcit*, which means *He killed a man*, *hominem* is the Accusative case of *homo.*

The Vocative case is the case of the person addressed or spoken to. Thus, in *Mī fīlī, virtūtem reverēre*, which means *My son, reverence virtue*, *fīlī* is the Vocative of *fīlius.*

The Nominative case is the same as in English in its use.

LESSON I.

First Declension.

When a noun names one thing we say it is singular ; when more than one, plural.

In English a noun is said to be feminine when it is the name of a living thing of female sex ; that is, gender in nouns corresponds to sex in living things ; so a masculine noun is the name of a living thing of male sex. Thus *girl* is feminine, *boy* masculine. In Latin this rule holds good : *puella*, a girl, is feminine, *puer*, a boy, is masculine. In English all other words are neuter : this is not so in Latin. This language gives gender to names of sexless things. *Insula*, an island, in Latin is feminine ;

mūrus, a wall, is masculine. Fairly easy rules happily can be given for determining gender in each noun. These we shall give later.

A list of all the forms of a noun is called the *Declension* of the noun. To go through this list is to *Decline* the noun.

There are five different sets of inflections in Latin. According as the noun takes the first, second, third, fourth, fifth set, we say it belongs to the First, Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth Declension.

Each declension is distinguished by the way in which the nouns belonging to it form the genitive singular. *Insul-a*, an island, makes genitive *insul-ae*. *Mūr-us*, a wall, makes genitive *mūr-ī*. *Insula* belongs to the First Declension; *mūrus* to the Second. The other declensions will be explained later.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Insul-a, f.... an island.

Singular.

Nominative & Vocative	*Insul-a*	an (the) island
Accusative . . .	*Insul-am*	an (the) island
Genitive . . .	*Insul-ae*	of an (the) island
Dative . . .	*Insul-ae*	to *or* for an (the) island
Ablative . . .	*Insul-ā*	by, with, from *or* in an (the) island

Plural.

Nominative & Vocative	*Insul-ae*	(the) islands
Accusative . . .	*Insul-ās*	(the) islands
Genitive . . .	*Insul-ārum*	of (the) islands
Dative . . .	*Insul-īs*	to *or* for (the) islands
Ablative . . .	*Insul-īs*	by, with, from *or* in (the) islands

You notice in this that Latin has no word for *the* or *a*, the definite and indefinite article, as we call them. *Insula* means *an* island or *the* island, and the sense tells us which.

The part in this noun, and in all nouns of any declension, left after removing the termination of the genitive singular we call the *stem*. A case then always consists of stem + inflection. Thus *insul-* is the stem, *-ae* the genitive inflection, *-am* the accusative inflection, and so on. To find the case of any noun, then, get the stem and add the inflection that marks that case.

Before going on to tackle an exercise with larger sentences it will be good to have a little practice in these inflections.

Exercise 1 (*a*).

Write down, then, the meanings of these Latin phrases:—

1. Amicitia incolarum Hispaniae. 2. Incolae Italiae. 3. Incolis Italiae. 4. Ferocia nautae. 5. Ira nautarum. 6. Insulis Italiae. 7. Insulas Hispaniae. (What case is *insulas ?*) 8. Victoria insularum nautarum.

Exercise 1 (*b*).

Write down the forms for these English phrases in Latin :—

1. The friendship of the sailors of Italy. 2. The inhabitants of Spain. 3. Of the inhabitants of Italy. 4. By the anger of the sailor. 5. By the victory of the poets. 6. To the islands. 7. For the sailors of Spain and Italy.

Vocabulary 1.

Amicitia, -ae, f....friendship	*Ira, -ae,* f....wrath
Et...and	*Italia, -ae,* f....Italy
Ferōcia, -ae, f....boldness	*Nauta, -ae,* m....sailor
Hispania, -ae, f....Spain	*Poēta, -ae,* m....poet
Incŏla, -ae, m. or f....inhabitant	*Victōria, -ae,* f....victory

Compare now what you have written with the Key in Part II., and so with each following exercise.

LESSON II.

The Verb.

The verbs are divided into Conjugations as the nouns into declensions. The nouns were classed according to the termination of the genitive singular: the verbs are classed according to the termination of their Present Infinitive. To love, to advise, to rule, to hear are present infinitives in English. *Am-āre, mon-ēre, reg-ĕre, aud-īre* are the corresponding verbs in Latin. The termination is in each case *-āre, -ēre, -ĕre, -īre;* the other part may be called the *Present stem.*

Verbs with infinitives in *-āre* belong to the First Conjugation.

Verbs with infinitives in *-ēre* belong to the Second Conjugation.

Verbs with infinitives in *-ĕre* belong to the Third Conjugation.

Verbs with infinitives in *-īre* belong to the Fourth Conjugation.

In this lesson we shall take up the Present and Imperfect tense of *amo.* Watch carefully the English meaning of the tense.

Present Indicative.

Sing.	1. *Am-ō*	I love *or* am loving
	2. *Am-ās*	Thou lovest *or* art loving
	3. *Am-at*	He loves *or* is loving
Plur.	1. *Am-āmus*	We love *or* are loving
	2. *Am-ātis*	Ye (you) love *or* are loving
	3. *Am-ant*	They love *or* are loving

I, thou, he, etc., are called the subjects of the verb and are said to be in the nominative case.

In the Latin, you notice, they are represented by the inflection or termination only. It is as if *amo* meant *love I* and *-o* stood for *I*, and so forth.—As a rule do not translate the English pronoun into Latin when it is nominative to a verb.

Further, this inflection shows whether it is the person speaking who is acting (first person), or the person spoken to (second person), or the person spoken about (third person).

This is true both of the first three forms, and also of the last three. The difference in the last three is that the persons are now plural—we are speaking of more than one.

When we say the verb is singular and use the singular forms in Latin, we mean there is one person acting. When we say the verb is plural and use the plural forms in Latin, we mean there is more than one person acting. The first person denotes that the person (or persons) speaking is (or are) acting; the second person denotes that the person (or persons) spoken to is (or are) acting; and the third person denotes that the person (or persons) spoken about is (or are) acting.

We have used the term Indicative above. The Indicative mood of the verb makes a plain straightforward statement, for example: *amo*, I love. The Present terminations also show that the action described by the verb is going on just now—at present. This form of the verb we call the Present tense.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

1. *Am-ābam* . . .	I was loving *or* used to love
2. *Am-ābās* . . .	Thou wast loving *or* used to love
3. *Am-ābat* . . .	He was loving *or* used to love
1. *Am-ābāmus* . .	We were loving *or* used to love
2. *Am-ābātis* . .	Ye (you) were loving *or* used to love
3. *Am-ābant* . . .	They were loving *or* used to love

The termination here, you see, tells you what person was acting and when the action was taking place. This tense denotes an action going on in the past and not completed; hence its name—*Imperfect.*

Note.—The following and all future exercises you should write referring to the vocabulary; then, after finishing, learn the vocabulary off by heart. The first one or two will of course be rather big, until we get some material to work on; but soon they will grow smaller. In Part II. you will find a correct translation of the exercises by means of which to correct your own. Watch carefully any notes that are given there, and carefully attend all through the book to differences in the order of the words in Latin and in English. You will see the order is seldom the same in the two languages.

Exercise 2 (*a*).

Turn into English:—

1. Incolas Hispaniae Barca concitat. 2. Primo incolarum amicitiam rogabat. 3. Saepe incolas hujus terrae superabatis. 4. Italiam nunc non amas, neque amabas. 5. Cum incolis insulae bellas, atque ferocia et ira flagras. 6. In insula Sicilia pugnabamus, sed incolae amicitiam negabant. 7. Amicitiam rogatis et impetratis. 8. Victoriam nunc speramus; hoc tibi negat.

(For Vocabulary see p. 13.)

The following exercise is now to be turned into Latin. To add a little to the interest I have tried to tell you consecutively a few facts about the life of Hamilcar Barca, a famous Carthaginian general, who fought against the Romans.

Exercise 2 (*b*).

(Words in italics are not to be translated.)

1. Barca is arming *the* inhabitants *of* Spain. 2. *He* was trying at first to win *the* friendship *of the* inhabitants. 3. *He* defeated many times *the* people of this land. 4. *He* does not love Italy now, nor used *he to* love *it*. 5. *He* was warring with *the* inhabitants *of* Italy, and *he* was ablaze *with* boldness and anger. 6. *He* was fighting in *the* island *of* Sicily. 7. *The* inhabitants *of* Italy, however, defeated Barca. 8. *He* then asked for *their* friendship and obtained *it*. 9. Now *he* is renewing *his* wrath against Italy. 10. *You* hope for victory, O Barca; *we* deny this to you.

Vocabulary 2.

Armō, -āre...to arm
Atque...and
Autem...however
Barca, -ae, m....Barca
Bellō, -āre...to war
Conciliō, -āre...to win (friendship, etc.). Imperfect Indicative will express trying-to-win
Concĭtō, -āre...to stir up
Cum (and ablative)...along with
Flagrō, -āre...to blaze
Hōc[1]...this (accusative)
Hujus[2]...of this (genitive)
Impetrō, -āre...to obtain a request
In (and ablative)...in
In (and accusative)...against
Neque...nor
Negō, -āre...to say . . . not, to deny, to refuse
Nōn...not
Nunc...now
Prīmō...at first
Pugnō, -āre...to fight
Renŏvō, -āre...to renew
Rogō, -āre...to ask, to ask for
Saepe...many times, often
Sed...but
Sicilia, -ae, f....Sicily
Sperō, -āre...to hope, to hope for
Supero, -are...to conquer
Terra, -ae, f....land
Tibi...to you (dative)
Tum...then

Note.—The vocabularies embrace only new words. If you forget any word given already, you must turn to the Vocabulary at the end of the book.

[1] Nom. or acc. neut. sing. of *hīc, haec, hōc*.
[2] Gen. sing. of *hīc, haec, hōc*.

LESSON III.

Second Declension.

Learn these two nouns off by heart, paying particular attention to the terminations or inflections :—

	Murus, m....a wall		*Bellum*, n....war	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Mūr-us	-ī	Bell-um	-a
Voc.	Mūr-e	-ī	Bell-um	-a
Acc.	Mūr-um	-ōs	Bell-um	-a
Gen.	Mūr-ī	-ōrum	Bell-ī	-ōrum
Dat.	Mūr-ō	-īs	Bell-ō	-īs
Abl.	Mūr-ō	-īs	Bell-ō	-īs

Decline like this all nouns ending in *-us* and *-um* with genitive in *-i*.

We shall not print the meanings of the cases any more. You must refer to Lesson I. if you forget them.

Some nouns of this declension end in *-er*, and are then declined like the two following.

Note.—Nouns in *-us* and *-er* are masculine; nouns in *-um* neuter.

	Puer, m....a boy.		*Ager*, m....a field.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Puer	-ī	Ager	Agr-ī
Acc.	Puer-um	-ōs	Agr-um	-ōs
Gen.	Puer-ī	-ōrum	Agr-ī	-ōrum
Dat.	Puer-ō	-īs	Agr-ō	-īs
Abl.	Puer-ō	-īs	Agr-ō	-īs

Notice *ager* forms all its other cases from *agr-*, dropping the *e*. The *e* is inserted in the nominative. This generally happens when the *e* has a consonant before it.

Exercise 3 (*a*).

Turn into English :—

1. Puer caprum amabat. 2. Capros Philippi filiorum

amabas. 3. Philippi equos concitabatis. 4. Animos filiorum Philippus concitabat. 5. Equi Philippi in agris sunt. 6. Filii Philippo dona dant. 7. Dona filiis Philippi damus. 8. Ubi sunt filii Philippi cum capris?

Exercise 3 (*b*).

Turn into Latin:—

1. We love Philip's sons. 2. Philip's sons used to love the horses. 3. Philip gives horses to his sons. 4. Where are the horses of Philip now? 5. They are in the fields. 6. The goats and horses belong to (*say* are of) the sons of Philip. 7. With his horses and his goats and his sons, Philip is in the fields.

Vocabulary 3.

Animus, -*ī*, m....mind
Caper, -*rī*, m....goat
Do, -*are*...to give
Dōnum, -*ī*, n...gift
Equus, -*ī*, m....horse
Est...is
Fīlius, -*iī*, m....son
Philippus, -*i*, m....Philip
Sunt...are
Sunt (and genitive)...belong to (*say* are of)
Ubi?...where? (adverb)

LESSON IV.

The Verb.

We shall now take two more tenses of the verb of the First Conjugation:—

Future Indicative.

1. *Am-ābō* . . . I shall love *or* shall be loving
2. *Am-ābis* . . . Thou wilt love *or* wilt be loving
3. *Am-ābit* . . . He will love *or* will be loving
1. *Am-ābimus* . . We shall love *or* shall be loving
2. *Am-ābitis* . . Ye (you) will love *or* will be loving
3. *Am-ābunt* . . They will love *or* will be loving

PERFECT INDICATIVE.

1.	*Amāv-ī* . . .	I have loved *or* I loved
2.	*Amāv-istī* . .	Thou hast loved *or* thou lovedst
3.	*Amāv-it* . .	He has loved *or* he loved
1.	*Amāv-imus* . .	We have loved *or* we loved
2.	*Amāv-istis* . .	Ye (you) have loved *or* ye (you) loved
3.	*Amāv-ērunt* or *-ēre*	They have loved *or* they loved

Learn these two tenses off by heart, paying particular attention to the terminations.

It is plain from the above that the *Future* tense states some event as going to happen, and that the *Perfect* tense states some completed act. You may translate the latter also by *I did love*, etc.

As soon as we come to the Perfect tense we require a new stem. In this conjugation we take the Present stem and add *av*, then to this we add the inflections given above.

Question.—What is the Perfect stem of *concito*, *supero*, *bello*, *flagro*, *armo*, *pugno ?*

Translate the following exercise now into English. The succeeding English, which is to be done into Latin, has furnished the model for these Latin sentences; but the Latin sentences are disconnected, whereas the English has a connection running through it.

Exercise 4 (*a*).

1. Cum Poenis ter, O Romani, bellavistis. 2. Primo in Italia cum Romanis pugnavimus. 3. Auxilio ventorum Romanos superabis. 4. Tandem adversarios superavere. 5. O Poeni, non jam victoriam sperabitis et bellum renovare recusabitis. 6. Amicitiam adversariorum rogabimus atque impetrabimus. 7. Itaque postea Poeni amicitiam Romanorum conciliaverunt. 8. Romanus cum Gallo pugnavit.

Exercise 4 (*b*).

(Words in italics are not to be translated.)

The Carthaginians waged-war with *the* Romans three times. At first *they* fought in Sicily, and *by the* aid *of the* winds *the* Carthaginians often defeated *the* sailors *of the* Romans. But at last near Sicily *the* Roman sailors defeated *their* opponents. *The* Carthaginians after that no longer hoped-for victory and refused to renew *the* war. *They* then asked-for *the* friendship *of their* enemies and obtained *it*. Accordingly *the* Carthaginians and *the* Romans were no longer enemies.

Vocabulary 4.

Adversarius, *-iī*, m....opponent, enemy
Apud (and accusative)...near
Auxilium, *-iī*, n....aid
Erant...were
Gallus, *-ī*, m....a Gaul
Itaque...accordingly
Non jam...no longer
Poenus, *-ī*, m....Carthaginian
Postea...after that
Recūso, *-āre*...to refuse
Romānus, *-ī*, m....Roman
Tandem...at last
Ter...thrice
Ventus, *-ī*, m....wind

LESSON V.

ADJECTIVES, CLASS I.—TIME WHEN, TIME HOW LONG.

In English the terminations of adjectives do not tell us much. In fact inflection has almost disappeared from the English adjective. We say *this boy*, but we say *these boys*: that is, *this* is singular, *these* plural. In Latin such changes are the rule, and not the exception, as in English. If we use an adjective with a singular masculine noun it has one form, with a feminine noun another, with a neuter noun another. In fact we may say adjectives take inflections to show differences in number, and gender and case; and they always agree in these respects with

the noun with which they go. Thus *pueri* is masc. sing. gen. of *puer*. *Boni* is masc. sing. gen. of *bonus*. Of a good boy, then, is in Latin *boni pueri*. Similarly, of a good girl is *bonae puellae*.

There are two great classes of adjectives in Latin. The masculine in the first class ends in *-us* or *-er*, and is declined like *murus* or *ager* or *puer*. The feminine is declined like a noun of the First Declension, and the nominative of course ends in *-a*. The neuter is declined like a neuter noun of the Second Declension, and of course the nom. ends in *-um*. Take the masculine form, then, in the nominative case of any adjective of this class, and to find the feminine treat it as a noun of the Second Declension and find what we have called the stem. To this add *-a*, *-um*, for feminine and neuter respectively, and decline by the above rules.

1. Thus *malus* (bad) gives stem *mal-*. The feminine, then, is *mala*, and the neuter *malum*.

2. Thus *asper* (rough) gives stem *asper*. The feminine, then, is *aspera*, and the neuter *asperum*.

3. So *ater* (black) gives stem *atr-* (like *ager*). The feminine, then, is *atra*, and the neuter *atrum*.

To distinguish between 2 and 3 you will require always to know and keep in mind what the *stem* of the adjective is. We now give an example declined in full for reference.

Bŏnus, -a, -um...good (like *murus*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Bon-us	-a	-um	Bŏn-ī	-ae	-a
Voc.	Bŏn-e	-a	-um	Bŏn-ī	-ae	-a
Acc.	Bŏn-um	-am	-um	Bŏn-ōs	-ās	-a
Gen.	Bŏn-ī	-ae	-ī	Bŏn-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
Dat.	Bŏn-ō	-ae	-ō	Bŏn-īs	-īs	-īs
Abl.	Bŏn-ō	-ā	-ō	Bŏn-īs	-īs	-īs

Asper, -a, -um...rough (like *puer*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. & V.	Asper	-a	-um	Asperī	-ae	-a
Acc.	Asper-um	-am	-um	Asper-ōs	-ās	-a
Gen.	Asper-ī	-ae	-ī	Asper-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
Dat.	Asper-ō	-ae	-ō	Asper-īs	-īs	-īs
Abl.	Asper-ō	-ā	-ō	Asper-īs	-īs	-īs

Ater, atra, atrum...black (like *ager*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. & V.	Ater	atr-a	atr-um	Atr-ī	-ae	-a
Acc.	Atr-um	-am	-um	Atr-ōs	-ās	-a
Gen.	Atr-ī	-ae	-ī	Atr-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
Dat.	Atr-ō	-ae	-ō	Atr-īs	-īs	-īs
Abl.	Atr-ō	-ā	-ō	Atr-īs	-īs	-īs

Time When, Time How Long.

1. *Auctumno fŏlia sunt rubra.* In autumn the leaves are red.

Auctumno answers to the question, At what time? When? *Auctumno* here is the *Ablative case.* This is how Latin expresses *point of time* as opposed to *duration of time*, which is put in the *Accusative.*

2. *Vīgintī annōs Poenī cum Romānīs bellābant.* During twenty years the Carthaginians waged war with the Romans.

But if the word itself does not denote time (if it is not a word like winter, summer, spring, daybreak, etc.) you would require to insert the preposition *in* in the first case, keeping the *Ablative case*, as :—

3. *In bellō īrâ flagramus.* In time of war we blaze with anger.

In the second example, in which we denote length or duration of time, we might use, for emphasis, *per*, a preposition which means *during*. Thus :—

Per viginti annos cum Romanis Poeni bellabant. During twenty years, etc. (just a little more emphatic than in 2).

Exercise 5 (*a*).

1. Folia atrae cupressi in horto meo mihi sunt cara. 2. Cupressus est umbrosa. 3. Equus filii Philippi erat semper pulcherrimus. 4. Sicilia est insula magna et pulchra. 5. Cupressi Siciliae sunt atrae et asperae. 6. Poeni miseri erant ubi hoc spectabant. 7. Magna maestitia videtur esse in animis. 8. Per multos annos cum Romanis pugnavi atque semper pugnabo.

Exercise 5 (*b*).

(Words in italics are not to be translated.)

Dear *to* me is *the* cypress in my garden. For *its* leaves are full-of-shade. *It* is tall and old, but *it* was always beautiful. *In* autumn *it* is loveliest. After-that *it* seems rough and gloomy. Then *I* am wretched when *I* am looking *at it*, for a great sadness seems *to* be in my mind. For many years *I* have loved my cypress, and *I* shall love *it* for-ever (*say* always).

Vocabulary 5.

Annus, *-ī*, m....year
Carus, *-a*, *-um*...dear
Cupressus, *-i*, f....cypress
Enim...for
Erat...was (imp. indic. of *Esse* = to be)
Esse...to be
Fŏlium, *-ii*, n....leaf
Hortus, *-i*, m....garden
Maestitia, *-ae*, f....sadness
Magnus, *-a*, *-um*....large, tall
Meus, *-a*, *-um*[1]...my
Mihi...to me (dative)
Mĭser, *-a*, *-um*...wretched
Multus, *-a*, *-um*...many
Pulcher, *-ra*, *-rum*...beautiful, lovely
Pulcherrimus, *-a*, *-um*...loveliest
Semper...always
Specto, *-are*...to look at, to behold
Ubi...when (conjunction)
Umbrosus, *-a*, *-um*...full of shade
Vetustus, *-a*, *-um*...old
Vidētur...it seems

[1] *Meus*, *-a*, *-um*, and adjectives like it are placed after the noun, thus: *In hortō meō*, in garden mine.

LESSON VI.

Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative.—Si, Ubi, Postquam with Future Perfect Indicative.

You remember we formed the Perfect stem by adding *av* to the Present stem. Two other tenses are formed from the resulting Perfect stem *amav-*, namely, the Pluperfect and the Future Perfect. Thus, where in English we say *I had loved* in Latin we say *amāveram.* This tense denotes an action which was completed some time ago (Pluperfect = Past Perfect). Again, where in English we say *I shall have loved* in Latin we say *amāverō.* This tense is called Future Perfect, because it denotes an action as completed in the future.

Watch carefully, as usual, the terminations in learning the following :—

Pluperfect Indicative.

1. *Amāv-eram*	I had loved	*Amāv-erāmus*	We had loved
2. *Amāv-erās*	Thou hadst loved	*Amāv-erātis*	Ye (you) had loved
3. *Amāv-erat*	He had loved	*Amāv-erant*	They had loved

Future Perfect Indicative.

1. *Amāv-erō* . . .	I shall have loved
2. *Amāv-eris* . . .	Thou wilt have loved
3. *Amāv-erit* . . .	He will have loved
1. *Amāv-erimus* . .	We shall have loved
2. *Amāv-eritis* . . .	Ye (you) will have loved
3. *Amāv-erint* . . .	They will have loved

Note, the double mark ˘ indicates that the syllable is sometimes long, sometimes short.

Si, Ubi, Postquam with Future Perfect Indicative.

1. If we arm
2. When we arm } the inhabitants, we shall conquer the Romans.
3. After we arm

Here the verb *arm* in the three sentences is Present Indicative in English; but observe, we must *have* armed the inhabitants before we can conquer the Romans. The action must be future and completed in each case. What we ought to say in English is: "If (When, After) we shall have armed the inhabitants we shall conquer the Romans"; and this is what we do say in Latin. The Latin tense is thus more strictly accurate and reasonable than the English one. In all such sentences as this, then, where in English the Present really denotes an action future and completed, you must use a *Future Perfect Indicative.*

1. *Si*
2. *Ubi* } *incolas armaverimus Romanos superabimus.*
3. *Postquam*

Exercise 6 (*a*).

1. Magnus adulescentulorum numerus hunc locum oppugnaverat. 2. Si adulescentuli hunc locum oppugnaverint Romani bellum renovabunt. 3. Ubi Africam a Poenis abalienaverimus Hispaniam oppugnabimus. 4. Postquam imperium propagaveritis magna pertinacia conservabitis. 5. Romanos ubi in magno periculo erant conservaveramus. 6. Consilium Poenorum comprobare dubitaveratis. 7. Postquam Gallos superaverint imperium ad Hispanos propagabunt. 8. Recusaverant Romanos oppugnare quod amicitiam conciliaverant. 9. Si incolas hujus insulae armavero pugnabunt. 10. In hoc loco Poeni cum Romanis multos annos bellaverant.

Exercise 6 (*b*).

1. They had attacked a large number of Carthaginians in this place. 2. If we attack this place the Spaniards will renew the war. 3. When ye have estranged Spain from the Carthaginians, ye will attack Africa. 4. After

we have extended our empire we shall preserve it with great stubbornness. 5. We had hesitated to preserve the Romans when they were in great danger. 6. I had hesitated to approve Barca's plan. 7. After we conquer Africa we shall extend our empire to Spain. 8. We shall refuse to attack the Romans because they have won our friendship. 9. When I have armed the Spaniards I shall fight with the Gauls. 10. In this place we had fought with Philip for many years.

Vocabulary 6.

Abalĭēno, -āre...to estrange
Adulescentulus, -i, m....young man
Africa, -ae, f....Africa
Comprobo, -āre...to approve
Conservo, -āre...to preserve
Consilium, -ii, n....plan
Dubito, -āre...to hesitate
Hispānus, -i, m....Spaniard
Hunc[1]...this (accusative)
Impĕrium, -ii, n....empire, power
Lŏcus, -i, m....place
Numerus, -i, m....number
Oppugno, -āre...to attack
Periculum, -i, n....danger
Pertinacia, -ae, f....stubbornness
Propāgo, -āre...to extend
Quod...because (conjunction)
Vir, -i, m....man

LESSON VII.

THIRD DECLENSION.—DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE.—EST AND GENITIVE.

In this declension there are nouns of all genders. In masculine and feminine nouns the terminations are usually as follows:—

	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	(various)	-ēs
Acc.	-em	-ēs
Gen.	-is	-um
Dat.	-ī	-ibus
Abl.	-e	-ibus

But sometimes the genitive plural ends in *-ium*. If the nominative of the noun ends in two consonants +

[1] Acc. masc. sing. of *hic, haec, hoc*.

s, it has *-ium*. If the noun adds *-is* or *-es* to the stem to form the nominative, it has *-ium*. All others have *-um*. Thus *rex*, *regis*, m., a king, *labor*, *labōris*, m., labour, *mōs*, *mōris*, m., a custom, will all take *-um* in the genitive plural; but *gens*,[1] *gentis*, f., a race, *urbs*, *urbis*, f., a city, *hostis*, *hostis*, m., an enemy, *nūbēs*, *nubis*, f., a cloud, will have *-ium*. To decline any noun (masc. or fem.) in this declension find the genitive singular (which must be learned by heart), drop the termination (*-is*), and add the endings given above. You must learn the nominative form in the case of each noun.

Learn the fully declined nouns off by heart and practise those in the lists given after.

	Rex, m....a king.		*Mos*, m.... a custom.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Rex (g + s = x)	Rēg-ēs	Mōs	Mōr-ēs
Acc.	Rēg-em	Rēg-ēs	Mōr-em	Mōr-ēs
Gen.	Rēg-is	Rēg-um	Mōr-is	Mōr-um
Dat.	Rēg-ī	Rēg-ibus	Mōr-ī	Mōr-ibus
Abl.	Rēg-e	Rēg-ibus	Mōr-e	Mōr-ibus

	Labor, m.... labour.		*Urbs*, f....a city.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Labor	Labōr-ēs	Urbs	Urb-ēs
Acc.	Labōr-em	Labōr-ēs	Urb-em	Urb-ēs
Gen.	Labōr-is	Labōr-um	Urb-is	Urb-ium
Dat.	Labōr-ī	Labōr-ibus	Urb-ī	Urb-ibus
Abl.	Labōr-e	Labōr-ibus	Urb-e	Urb-ibus

	Civis, m....a citizen.		*Nubes*, f....a cloud.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Cīvis	Cīv-ēs	Nūbēs	Nūbēs
Acc.	Cīv-em	Cīv-ēs	Nūb-em	Nūb-ēs
Gen.	Cīv-is	Cīv-ium	Nūb-is	Nūb-ium
Dat.	Cīv-ī	Cīv-ibus	Nūb-ī	Nūb-ibus
Abl.	Cīv-e	Cīv-ibus	Nūb-e	Nūb-ibus

[1] Really ends in two consonants, the *t* being dropped before *s*.

Practise the following :—

Genitive plural in *-um.*—*Dux, ducis*, m., leader ; *consul, consulis*, m., consul ; *princeps, principis*, m., chief ; *terror, terrōris*, m., terror ; *imperātor, -tōris*, m., commander-in-chief ; *error, errōris*, m., error.

Genitive plural in *-ium.*—*Hostis, -is*, m., enemy ; *classis, -is*, f., fleet ; *navis, -is*, f., ship ; *fīnis, -is*, m., end ; *gens, gentis*, f., race (remember *gens* is for *gen(t)s :* a similar thing happens with nouns having *d* before the *s*).

Descriptive Genitive (or Ablative).

We talk in English of *a man of great wisdom.* In Latin "of great wisdom" may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Genitive. Note the order of the words carefully : *Magnā vir sapientiā* or *magnae vir sapientiae.*

Note.—There must be an adjective with the noun ; thus, *a man of wisdom* is not *vir sapientiae*, but *vir sapiens.*

Est and Genitive.

Where in English we say it is the part of, the duty of, the mark of, somebody to do something, in Latin we use *est* and the *genitive* merely.

It is the part of a general to overcome the enemy.
Est ducis superare hostēs.

Exercise 7 (*a*).

1. Est Romanorum fines imperii propagare. 2. Hamilcar, summa vir ferocia, belli cupiditate flagrabat. 3. Mente agitabamus bellum renovare. 4. Equis, armis, viris, pecunia totam locupletabimus Africam. 5. Hieme in coelo sunt atrae nubes. 6. Classem Poenorum apud insulas superaverunt Romani. 7. Populus Romanus

ceteras gentes virtute superat. 8. Est principis populum gubernare. 9. Rex Britannorum, magna vir sapientia, cum Romanis saepe pugnabat. 10. Si pacem conciliaverint naves conservabunt.

Exercise 7 (*b*).

1. It is the duty of a commander-in-chief to preserve the limits of the Empire. 2. Ye were pondering in mind the renewal of (to renew) the peace. 3. O Hannibal, you enriched Africa with steeds and money. 4. In autumn the sky is beautiful. 5. The ships of the Romans attacked the Carthaginians near the islands. 6. The Romans, a people of great valour, used to govern all other races. 7. It is incumbent upon a chief to defeat the enemy. 8. To make peace is the privilege of the commander-in-chief. 9. No longer shall we wage war with the Romans with ships. 10. When we conquer the fleet of the Carthaginians we shall make peace.

Vocabulary 7.

Arma, *-orum*, n. pl....arms
Britanni, *-orum*, m. pl....Britons
Ceterī, *-ae*, *-a*...all other (plural)
Coelum, *-i*, n....the sky
Conciliare pacem...to make peace
Cupiditas, *-tatis*, f....desire
Guberno, *-are*...to govern
Hamilcar, *-is*,[1] m....Hamilcar
Hannibal, *-is*,[2] m....Hannibal
Hiems, *-ĕmis*, f....winter
Locuplēto, *-are*...to enrich
Mente agitare...to ponder in mind, to meditate
Pax, *pacis*, f....peace
Pecunia, *-ae*, f....money
Populus, *-i*, m....a people
Summus, *-a*, *-um*...very great
Totus, *-a*, *-um*...whole
Virtūs, *-tūtis*, f....virtue, valour

[1] Pronounce the genitive Ha-milc′-ăris.
[2] " " " Ha-nib′-ălis.

LESSON VIII.

THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS.—MOTION TO AND FROM A PLACE.

All neuter nouns of the third declension have the accusative singular and plural the same as the nominative and vocative singular and plural respectively.

The nominative plural usually ends in *-a* and the genitive plural in *-um;* but if the nominative singular is stem + *e*, the ablative singular has *-i*, the nominative plural has *-ia*, and the genitive plural *-ium*.

Thus, *tempus*, *temporis*, n., time, *nōmen*, *nōminis*, n., name, have *-a* and *-um;* but *mare*, *maris*, n., sea, has *marī*, *maria*, *marium*.

Learn the fully declined nouns off by heart and practise those in the list given after:—

	Nomen, n....a name.		*Tempus*, n....time.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N., V. & Acc.	Nōmen	Nōmin-a	Tempus	Tempor-a
Gen.	Nōmin-is	Nōmin-um	Tempor-is	Tempor-um
Dat.	Nōmin-ī	Nōmin-ibus	Tempor-ī	Tempor-ibus
Abl.	Nōmin-e	Nōmin-ibus	Tempor-e	Tempor-ibus

	Mare, n....a sea.		*Vectigal*, n....a tax.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N., V. & Acc.	Mar-e	Mar-ia	Vectīgal	Vectīgāl-ia
Gen.	Mar-is	Mar-ium	Vectīgāl-is	Vectīgāl-ium
Dat. & Abl.	Mar-ī	Mar-ibus	Vectīgāl-ī	Vectīgāl-ibus

The stems of nouns like *mare* usually end in *-al*, *-il*, *-ar*, and in a few like *vectīgal* the *e* of the nominative singular has been lost. Do not confuse these with masculine nouns in *-al*, *-il*, *-ar*, as *sal*, m., salt, *lar*, m., household god.

Practise the following: *Cognōmen*, *-inis*, n., surname;

munus, -eris, n., gift; *foedus, -eris*, n., treaty; *genus, -eris*, n., class, kind; *litus, -oris*, n., shore; *hastīle, -is*, n., spear shaft; *sedīle, -is*, n., seat; *animal, animālis*, n., animal.

Motion to and from a Place.

1. *Hannibal pecuniam Roma ad Africam portavit.* Hannibal brought the money from Rome to Africa.

2. *Romam ab Africa navigāvimus.* To Rome from Africa we sailed.

Rule.—Express motion to a place in Latin by a preposition with the accusative, but use the accusative with no preposition in the case of a town or small island.

Express motion from a place with a preposition and the ablative, except in the case of a town or small island, when you omit the preposition.

Exercise 8 (*a*).

1. Hamilcar, Hannibalis filius, cognomine Barca, magna cum classe in Italiam navigavit. 2. Et mari et terra Poenos Romani superaverunt. 3. Non enim suae est virtutis pacem rogare (see Note at end of Vocabulary 8). 4. Societatem foedere confirmabant. 5. Foedera Karthaginienses violaverunt. 6. Romam ad Caesarem munera magna portant (see Note at end of Vocabulary 8). 7. Melita Romam magna difficultate navigavimus. 8. Animal providum est homo. 9. Cunctorum animalium providentissimum est homo. 10. Ferrum ex hastili in corpore erat.

Exercise 8 (*b*).

1. Caius, by surname Caesar, sailed with large forces to Malta. 2. By land and sea we have defeated the fleets of the Romans. 3. It is not in-keeping-with-my-valour to make peace (see Note at end of Vocabulary 8). 4. We

have ratified the peace with a treaty. 5. Ye have violated the treaty, O Carthaginians. 6. We are sailing to Caesar at Rome with great gifts (see Note at end of Vocabulary 8). 7. From Rome to London is a long voyage. 8. The animals of the sea are very big. 9. Man surpasses all animals in virtue. 10. He was renewing the iron-head of his spear.

Vocabulary 8.

Caesar, -ăris, m....Caesar
Confirmo, -are...to ratify, to make strong
Copiae, -arum, f....forces
Corpus, corpŏris, n....body
Cunctus, -a, -um...all
Difficultas -tātis, f....difficulty
Ferrum, -i, n....iron, steel
Hŏmō, -inis, m....man
Karthaginiensis, -is, m....Carthaginian
Londinium, -ii, n....London
Longus, -a, -um...long
Marī et terrā...by land and sea
Melĭta, -ae, f....Malta
Navigatiō, -ōnis, f....voyage
Navigo, -are...to sail, to voyage
Providentissimus, -a, -um...most prudent
Providus, -a, -um...prudent, foreseeing
Societas, -tatis, f....alliance
Supero, -are...to surpass
Terra marique[1]...by land and sea
Violo, -are...to violate, to break

Note.—It is in keeping with my valour = *est* and the genitive = it is of my valour. *Cf.* third sentence in Exercise 8 (*a*).

To Cæsar at Rome: say, To Cæsar to Rome. *Cf.* sixth sentence in Exercise 8 (*a*).

[1] There are a number of little words in Latin which are put at the end of other words and cannot stand alone. These are called *enclitics*. Thus *que* = and; hence *marique* = and by sea.

LESSON IX.

A few Hints on the Third Declension.—Place Where.

You will find this the hardest declension in Latin, because of its variety and the consequent difficulty in giving good general rules. Below are given a few examples of well-marked classes of nouns in this declension. In future try when you come across a noun to think which noun it is like among those you know, and so get the nouns into groups in your mind. The declension will become quite easy by practice. If you try to learn it all at once you will only become confused. See that the case-endings are thoroughly mastered and leave the rest to time and experience.

Practise yourself in these nouns and remember the type of formation.

	stem	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
Pater, m., father	*patr*	*-em*,	*-is*,	*-i*,	*-e*, etc.
Mātēr, f., mother	*mātr*				
Frātēr, m., brother	*frātr*				

These, no doubt, will remind you of *ager* in the Second Declension, because of the dropping of the *e* of the nominative in the genitive.

	stem	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
Natiō, f., nation	*nation*	*-em*,	*-is*,	*-i*,	*-e*, etc.
Ratiō, f., reason, method	*ration*				
Mentiō, f., mention	*mention*				

There are many nouns like these in the declension.

	stem	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
Civitas, f., State	*civitāt*	*-em*,	*-is*,	*-i*,	*-e*, etc.
Cupiditas, f., greed, desire	*cupiditāt*				
Calamitas, f., disaster	*calamitāt*				

You may perhaps have noticed by this time that a *d* or *t* in the stem is dropped before *s* in the nominative singular.

	stem	Acc.	Gen.	Dat.	Abl.
Fortitūdō, f., bravery	*fortitudin*	*-em*,	*-is*,	*-i*,	*-e*, etc.
Multitudō, f., multitude	*multitudin*				
Consuetudō, f., custom	*consuetudin*				
Imago, f., image	*imagin*				

So commonly with nouns in *do* and *go*.

Gender in the Third Declension.

The gender in this declension in the case of sexless things is rather perplexing. The following three rules will help you, but there are numerous exceptions:—

1. If the nominative of the noun ends in *-o*, *-or*, *-os*, *-er*, or in *-es* with more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative, it is generally *masculine*.

2. If the nominative ends in *-as*, *-aus*, *-is*, *-do*, *-go*, *-io*, *-x*, *-s* following a consonant, or in *-es* without more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative, it is generally *feminine*.

3. Nouns ending in *-l*, *-a*, *-n*, *-c*, *-e*, *-t*, *-ar*, *-ur*, *-en*, *-us* are usually *neuter*. Remember the word *lancet* and it will help you.

Place Where.

Caesar Romae habitat, Caius Athēnis. Caesar lives at Rome, Caius at Athens.

Caesar in Africa nunc habitat. Caesar is now living in Africa.

These sentences give examples of how to translate *place where* in Latin. The Rule is—Generally use *in* and the *ablative;* but with the name of a town or a small

island which is a singular noun of the First or Second Declension use the *genitive*, with all others the *ablative*, *i.e.*, with plural nouns of First and Second Declension and all nouns of Third, Fourth and Fifth.

Exercise 9 (*a*).

1. Zamae autem Hannibalem Scipio superavit. 2. Syracusis quidem Cicero annum unum habitavit. 3. Magnam hostium multitudinem Caesar oppugnavit. 4. Karthagine bellum mente agitabamus. 5. Caesar fortitudine cunctos superabat. 6. In Africa multae et magnae ferae sunt. 7. Athenis, Atheniensium urbe, multa et pulchra templa sunt. 8. Hac ratione Hannibal magnae civitatis amicitiam conciliavit. 9. Pecuniae cupiditate multi homines flagrant. 10. Non est meae consuetudinis diu Cumis habitare.

Exercise 9 (*b*).

1. However, at Zama the Romans defeated their enemies. 2. For many years, indeed, Pompeius lived at Rome. 3. A great multitude of the enemy attacked the Romans at break of day. 4. At Carthage the Carthaginians were meditating war. 5. Caesar and Pompey surpassed all other Romans in greed of glory. 6. At Athens there are many beautiful statues (see Note at end of Vocabulary 9). 7. In this way Hannibal had won the friendship of the States of Italy. 8. We were warring for one year in Africa with a small tribe. 9. Men overcome the greed of money by love of virtue. 10. It is not in-keeping-with-my-custom to attack warlike nations.

Vocabulary 9.

Amor, *-ōris*, m....love
Athēnae, *-arum*, f....Athens
Atheniensis, *-is*, m....Athenian
Bellicōsus, *-a*, *-um*....warlike
Carthāgo, *-inis*, f....Carthage
Cumae, *-arum*, f....Cumae
Fama, *-ae*, f....glory
Fera, *-ae*, f....wild beast
Habito, *-are*...to live, to dwell
Hāc...abl. fem. of *Hic* = this
Lux, *lucis*, f....light
Natio, *-nis*, f....tribe, nation
Pompeius, *-i*, m....Pompeius (a famous Roman)
Prima luce...at break of day (abl. of time)
Quidem...indeed (adverb)
Statua, *-ae*, f....statue
Syracusae, *-arum*, f....Syracuse (in Sicily)
Templum, *-i*, n....temple
Unus, *-a*, *-um*...one
Zama, *-ae*, f....Zama (town near Carthage)

Note.—In sixth sentence of Exercise 9 (*b*) say "many *and* beautiful," and so always in Latin. *Cf.* sixth sentence in Exercise 9 (*a*).

LESSON X.

Adjectives, Class II.—Amans.—Genitive of Price.

The remaining adjectives in Latin should not give any trouble. You remember the adjectives we have had already ended in the nominative in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, and were declined like nouns of the First and Second Declension. The other adjectives are declined like nouns of the Third Declension, or are indeclinable (that is, they have one form for all cases). The former are easily declined, because, with the exception of the *Present Participle* and the *comparative form* (to be explained later), they have all *-i*, *-ium* and *-ia* for the ablative singular, genitive plural and nominative neuter plural respectively. Here is an example of each kind:—

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
1.	*Omnis*	*omnis*	*omne*	all
2.	*Ācer*	*ācris*	*ācre*	keen, spirited
3.	*Ingens*	*ingens*	*ingens*	huge

From this you infer that in the nominative they may be of one, two or three terminations; but they all form the remaining cases in a similar manner. Below, each is declined in full. Note the similarity between the case-endings and those of the nouns of the Third Declension.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom. & Voc.	Omnis	omne	Omnēs	omnia
Acc.	Omnem	omne	Omnēs	omnia
Gen.	Omnis		Omnium	
Dat. & Abl.	Omnī		Omnibus	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom. & Voc.	Ācer ācris	ācre	Ācrēs	ācria
Acc.	Ācrem	ācre	Ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	Ācris		Ācrium	
Dat. & Abl.	Ācrī		Ācribus	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. Fem. & Neut.		Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom. & Voc.	Ingens		Ingentēs	ingentia
	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.		
Acc.	Ingentem	ingens	Ingentēs	ingentia
Gen.	Ingentis		Ingentium	
Dat. & Abl.	Ingentī		Ingentibus	

Note that in all three the masculine, feminine and neuter are the same in the genitive singular and plural, and in the dative and ablative singular and plural.

Amans.

You remember we got the Present stem of *am-o* by dropping the personal ending *-o*. If we add to this *-ans*

we get *am-ans*, which means *lov-ing*. This part of the verb, because it is *partly* a verb and *partly* an adjective, we call the *Participle;* and since it refers to present time we call it the *Present Participle.* It is declined exactly like *ingens*, but has *-e* in the ablative singular (*amante*). The Participles, however, sometimes have *-i*.

Genitive of Price.

Hoc donum maximi aestimo. I value this gift at a very great price.

In cases like this the price is sometimes put as the *genitive* of an *adjective.* This is called the *genitive of price.*

Exercise 10 (*a*).

1. Hostes quidem sese armantes fugavimus. 2. Jam enim omnes inimicos superaverat. 3. Tum postridie ingens hostium multitudo Caesarem oppugnabat. 4. Namque prudentem maximi semper aestimamus. 5. Scipio quoque uxorem suam amore acri amabat. 6. Mox acribus equis Carthaginienses oppugnabitis et fugabitis. 7. Catonem magni, pluris Caesarem Romani aestimabant. 8. Hamilcar enim non solum hostes a muris Carthaginis fugavit, sed etiam ingentem pecuniae copiam comparavit. 9. Tum consilia ducis omnia milites maximi aestimabant. 10. Fortibus militibus praemia ingentia Caesar donabat.

Exercise 10 (*b*).

1. The Romans attacked the Carthaginians while exploring the territory (omit *while*). 2. For already they had estranged all the States. 3. Then with a huge multitude of men the enemy attacked Caesar. 4. However, we shall always value the brave man at a greater price (for *brave man* use simply masculine of adjective). 5. We

indeed love our wives with a passionate love. 6. The fiery steeds of the Carthaginians will soon attack and put-to-flight the enemy. 7. Ye have estimated virtue highly, but money more highly still. 8. We shall not only rout the enemy from the walls, but attack their city also. 9. The soldiers estimated at a low value the designs of the brave general. 10. Generals give great rewards to brave soldiers.

Vocabulary 10.

Acer, ācris, ācre...passionate, fiery
Cato, -ōnis, m....Cato (a famous Roman)
Comparo, -are...to prepare
Dōno, -are...to give as a present
Dux, -cis, m....general
Etiam...still (conj.)
Explōro, -are...to explore
Fortis, -e...brave, strong
Mīles, -itis, m....soldier
Mox...soon
Parvi...at a low value
Non solum . . . sed etiam...not only . . . but also
Parvus, -a, -um...little
Plus, pluris...more
Postrīdiē...on the next day
Praemium, -ii, n....reward
Quoque...also
Sēsē...himself, themselves, etc. (acc.)
Suus, -a, -um...his own, her own, its own

LESSON XI.

FOURTH DECLENSION.—PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—UT FINAL, NE.

	Exercitus, m....army.		*Cornu*, n....horn.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Exercit-us	-ūs	Corn-ū	-ua
Acc.	Exercit-um	-ūs	Corn-ū	-ua
Gen.	Exercit-ūs	-uum	Corn-ūs	-uum
Dat.	Exercit-uī	-ibus	Corn-uī	-ibus
Abl.	Exercit-ū	-ibus	Corn-ū	-ibus

You will find this declension very easy. The nominative always ends in *-us* in masculine and feminine

nouns, and in *-u* in neuter nouns. The genitive always ends in *-ūs* (pronounced like *uss* in *puss*). The nouns are declined like the two above.

Here is an irregular noun which is so common that it should be learned off by heart. In some cases, it will be observed, it takes Second Declension forms.

Domus, f....house.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Dom-us	Dom-ūs
Acc.	Dom-um	Dom-ōs
Gen.	Dom-ūs	Dom-uum *or* ōrum
Dat.	Dom-uī	Dom-ibus
Abl.	Dom-ō	Dom-ibus

Domī means "at home"; *domō*, "from home"; *domum*, "homewards." N.B.—*Domi* is an old "place-where" or locative case.

Present and Imperfect Subjunctive.

Hitherto in our lessons on the verb we have talked only of the *Indicative Mood*, but there is another mood, called the *Subjunctive Mood*. In this mood there are four tenses—the *Present*, *Imperfect*, *Perfect* and *Pluperfect*. The meaning of the mood is best learned by practice.

The Present Subjunctive comes from the present stem *am-*.

	Singular.	Plural.
1.	Am-em	Am-ēmus
2.	Am-ēs	Am-ētis
3.	Am-ēt	Am-ent

You may notice that each person, save the first, is got by changing *a* of the *Present Indicative* into *e*, and so with all verbs of the First Conjugation.

The Present Infinitive of *amō* is *am-āre*, to love. To

get the *Imperfect Subjunctive* add *-m* to this, and conjugate as follows :—

Singular.	Plural.
1. Amāre-m	Amāre-mus
2. Amāre-s	Amāre-tis
3. Amāre-t	Amāre-nt

You will observe that every tense, Indicative or Subjunctive, which you have had yet in *amo* ends in all its persons in *-m* (or *-o*), *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*. These are the letters you add to the Present Infinitive to make the Imperfect Subjunctive. This is so in almost every verb in Latin. If you know the Present Infinitive, then, of any verb, you can always form the Imperfect Subjunctive.

Ut Final, Ne.

He is arming his soldiers *to attack* the enemy.

He has armed his soldiers *in order to attack* the enemy.

He will arm his soldiers *for the purpose of attacking* (*that he may attack*, etc., etc.) the enemy.

On consideration of these sentences, it will be found that the three versions after "soldiers" all mean the same thing, although expressed in different words. In Latin the translation for each and all is commonly the same :—

Milites armat (*armavit*, *armabit*) *ut hostes oppugnet.*

Literally, His soldiers he is arming (etc.) that the enemy he may attack.

The Present Subjunctive is used in such clauses expressing a purpose after a Present, Perfect, or Future tense in the main clause.

Note.—The Perfect must mean "has *or* have armed," etc., not simply "armed".

He was arming (armed, had armed) his soldiers to attack (that he might attack, etc., etc.) the enemy.

Milites armabat (*armavit, armaverat*) *ut hostes oppugnaret.*

The Imperfect Subjunctive is used in such clauses after an Imperfect, Perfect (meaning "armed") or Pluperfect in the main clause.

After this we shall call the Present, Perfect (when it means "have armed," etc.) and Future *primary tenses*; the Imperfect, Perfect and Pluperfect we shall call *secondary tenses.*

Note that "that not" is *ne.* For example: *Milites armabat ne hostes urbem oppugnarent.* He was arming his soldiers *that* the enemy might *not* attack the city.

Exercise 11 (*a*).

1. Itaque Carthaginienses magno cum exercitu in Italiam navigaverunt ut Romanos oppugnarent. 2. Prima luce equitatus magnam Poenorum manum fugavit. 3. Cives postea tres exercitus comparabunt ne urbem hostes oppugnent. 4. Interim Gallos concitabat ut saltum noctu occuparent. 5. Cum omnibus gentibus Romani bellaverunt. 6. Cornua caprorum sunt maxima et dura. 7. Hannibal et legati postridie domi cenaverunt. 8. Tertio mense igitur Romam domo navigabimus. 9. Itaque sese armavit ut domum conservet. 10. Namque hoc consilium comprobaveratis ut casum vitaretis.

Exercise 11 (*b*).

1. Accordingly Cæsar with a large army sailed to Britain to attack his enemies. 2. At daybreak we routed a band of the enemy with our cavalry. 3. The magistrates thereafter prepared an army that the enemy might not attack the city. 4. The enemy are stirring up the Gauls to seize the defile by night. 5. With her armies,

Rome (*say* Romans) conquered the world (all nations *or* races). 6. With their horns goats attack their enemies. 7. The magistrates on the next day dined at home. 8. For Caius had sailed from Rome in the third month. 9. They accordingly arm themselves to preserve their homes. 10. We approved of this plan that we might avoid a disaster.

Vocabulary 11.

Casus, *-ūs*, m....disaster
Ceno, *-are*...to dine
Domi...at home (called the locative case of *Domus*)
Durus, *-a*, *-um*...hard
Equitatus, *-ūs*, m....cavalry
Exercitus, *-ūs*, m....army
Igitur...therefore (never first in the sentence)
Interim...meanwhile
Legātus, *-i*, m....officer
Magistrātus, *-ūs*, m....magistrate
Manus, *-ūs*, f....(1) hand, (2) band
Mensis, *-is*, m....month
Noctū...by night (adv.)
Occupo, *-are*...to seize
Saltus, *-ūs*, m....defile
Tertius, *-a*, *-um*...third
Tres, n. *tria*...three
Vito, *-are*...to avoid

LESSON XII.

FIFTH DECLENSION.—PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—CUM AND SUBJUNCTIVE.—USES OF ADJECTIVE.

Of the nouns there is only one declension left—the *Fifth*. This again is a small and easy one. The nouns are all declined like the one given below. Their genitive ends in *-ēi* (but, if stem ends in a consonant, in *-ĕi*), the Nominative in *-es*; there are only two nouns in the declension in which the plural is found complete—*dies*, *diēi*, m. or f., a day; *res*, *rei*, f., a thing.

	Dies, m., f.[1]...a day.		*Res*, f....a thing.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Di-ēs	di-ēs	R-ēs	r-ēs
Acc.	Di-em	di-ēs	R-em	r-ēs
Gen.	Di-ēī	di-ērum	R-eī	r-ērum
Dat.	Di-ēī	di-ēbus	R-eī	r-ēbus
Abl.	Di-ē	di-ēbus	R-ē	r-ēbus

	Perfect Subjunctive.		Pluperfect Subjunctive.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
1.	Amāv-erim	amāv-erĭmus	Amāv-issem	amāv-issēmus
2.	Amāv-erĭs	amāv-erĭtis	Amāv-issēs	amāv-issētis
3.	Amāv-erit	amāv-erint	Amāv-isset	amāv-issent

We called *am-are* the Present Infinitive, and added *-m* to form the Imperfect Subjunctive. To form the Perfect Subjunctive and Pluperfect Subjunctive we go to a different stem—the *Perfect stem.* This stem is, in this verb, *amāv-*. To this add the terminations given above and you get the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Infinitive which means *to have loved* is called the *Perfect Infinitive*, because it denotes a completed action. This is always formed by adding *-isse* to the *Perfect stem*, and it is worth noting that the Pluperfect Subjunctive is formed from it by adding *-m*, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt* (compare the formation of the Imperfect Subjunctive). The meanings of these two tenses will also be best learned by practice.

Cum and Subjunctive.

1. Since (When) Hannibal was stirring up the Spaniards, the Romans began to think of war.

2. When (Since) Hannibal had stirred up the Spaniards, the Romans renewed the war.

1. *Cum Hannibal Hispanos concitaret, bellum in mente agitabant Romani.*

[1] In the plural this noun is masculine only.

2. *Cum Hannibal Hispanos concitavisset, bellum renovaverunt Romani.*

Since or *when,* with a past tense in English, is translated by *cum* (sometimes written *quum*) with Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in Latin.

When the English tense denotes a *continuous* action (like *was stirring*) use the *Imperfect Subjunctive.*

When the English tense denotes a *completed action* (like *had stirred*) use the *Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

Uses of the Adjective.

The Latin adjective is often used like an English *noun.* Thus *boni* might mean "good men"; *bonae* might mean "good women"; *bona* might mean "good things". And if we are translating such phrases into Latin we need not put a word for "man," "woman," or "thing"; the case-endings *-us, -a, -um* are sufficient:—

Sapientes virtutem amant. Wise men (*or* the wise) love virtue.

Omnia mea mecum porto. I am carrying all my property (things) with me (*mecum* = *me* + *cum, cum* being here a preposition).

Then note such phrases as:—

His hopes were great and many, *Multa et magna sperabat:* literally, He was hoping for many and great things.

He had had many thoughts, *Multa cogitaverat:* literally, He had thought many things.

Exercise 12 (*a*).

1. Tum magna sperabatis, cogitabatis maesta. 2. Boni et bonae virtutem, sapientiam, fidem amant. 3. Itaque cum primam aciem superavissem, secundam oppugnavi. 4. Hodie haud dubie aciem hostium fugabunt. 5. Cum igitur in acie Romani starent, pugnare dubitavimus. 6. Cum Galli legiones Romanas superavissent, urbs Roma

erat in magno periculo. 7. Summa enim spe Romam navigavimus. 8. Cum deos multa oravisset, viros armavit. 9. Caesar e contrario de his rebus considerare recusabat. 10. Hannibal contra summa fide pacem conservabat.

Exercise 12 (*b*).

1. Then his hopes were high, but sad his thoughts. 2. Accordingly, since he had routed the first line, he attacked the second. 3. For to-day we shall doubtlessly rout the enemy's line-of-battle. 4. The enemy were standing in battle array. 5. However the commonwealth was in great danger, since the Gauls had routed their legions. 6. For they had attacked the Roman legions with the greatest hope. 7. When they had prayed the gods many prayers, they renewed the battle. 8. Many were his thoughts as he looked on the Roman line-of-battle. 9. For with the greatest good-faith Hannibal had made peace. 10. On the contrary, the Romans refused to take thought concerning these matters and these dangers.

Vocabulary 12.

Acies, *-ēī*, f....line of battle, battle array
Considero, *-are*...to consider, to think
Contra...on the other hand (adv.)
Deus, *deī*, m....god
E contrario ... on the contrary (adv. phrase)
Fides, *-ĕī*, f....good faith
Haud...not
Haud dubiē...without doubt (literally: not doubtfully) (adv.)
Hīs...abl. plur. of *Hic* = this
Hodie...to-day (adv.)
Legio, *legionis*, f....legion
Maestus, *-a*, *-um*...sad
Oro, *-are*...to pray
Prīmus, *-a*, *-um*...first
Respublica,[1] *rei publicae*, f....commonwealth
Sapientia, *-ae*, f....wisdom
Secundus, *-a*, *-um*...second
Spes, *speī*, f....hope
Sto, *stare*[2]...to stand

[1] Note, this word is a compound of *res* and the feminine of *publicus* = public. Decline it like any noun and adjective—*respublica*, *rem publicam*, *rei publicae*, etc.

[2] Note the perfect, *stĕti*, is irregular.

LESSON XIII.

SUPINE, FUTURE PARTICIPLE ACTIVE AND PAST PARTICIPLE PASSIVE. —SUPINE AFTER A VERB OF MOTION.—NOUN AND PARTICIPLE EQUAL TO ENGLISH ABSTRACT NOUN AND "OF."—IS, EA, ID.

Omitting the *Gerund* and *Gerundive*, and the *Imperative*, which we shall treat of further on, we have now done all the *Active Voice* of the First Conjugation except one or two parts which come from a stem we have not mentioned yet. In *amo* this stem is *amat-*, which you get by dropping the termination *-um* in a part of the verb called the *Supine—amatum.* This form has the same translation in English as the *Present Infinitive* (*to love*, for example), but is used in one special case. We say in Latin :—

> *Ad Hispaniam navigavit hostes oppugnatum.*
> He sailed to Spain to attack the enemy.

In Latin the Present Infinitive *oppugnare* would be quite wrong. You could have used, however, *ut* and the *Imperfect Subjunctive* (Lesson XI.). The *Supine*, then, is used to denote *purpose* after a *verb of motion.*

From this stem *amat-* you can form other three parts of the verb. (No matter what the verb is, the principle is the same.)

Supine stem + *-ū* gives Second Supine : thus *amat* + *-u* = *amātū.*

Supine stem + *-ūrus, -a, -um* gives *Future Participle Active :* thus *amāt-ūrus, -a, -um.*

Supine stem + *-us, -a, -um* gives *Past Participle Passive :* thus *amāt-us, -a, -um.*

You may neglect the Second Supine for the present ; it is rarely used. The Future Participle *amaturus, -a, -um* means *about to love.* What we called the *Past*

Participle Passive means in this verb *having been loved.* Here you see the person or thing spoken about is being acted on: the participle is therefore passive in form. These two participles are just like adjectives; they always go with nouns or pronouns, and are declined like adjectives of Class I. (Remember Lesson V.)

Similarly in the case of other verbs, if you look up in the Vocabulary the *Supine Stem* you can form these three parts:—

The Second Supine: thus *superātum* gives *superātū.*

The Past Participle Passive: thus *superātum* gives *superātus, -a, -um.*

The Future Participle Active: thus *superātum* gives *superātūrus, -a, -um.*

Note on the Past Participle Passive.

The Latin Past Participle Passive denotes an action which is past in time and passive in sense. Thus *amatus* means *having been loved,* and nothing else. English in many cases uses its participles loosely. We say, "Mounting his horse he rode away," "Drawing his sword he slew the man," "Charging at full speed they routed the enemy," where in each case we mean, strictly speaking, "having mounted," "having drawn," "having charged," etc. We must never use our Participles in this loose way in Latin. The verb must denote a completed action before the Past Participle Passive can be used.

Abstract Nouns in English and Latin.

As a rule Latin does not like abstract nouns (such nouns as conquest, rout, etc.), and has a very neat expression with the Past Participle Passive to get rid of them. Thus "after the conquest of the Gauls" becomes "after the Gauls having been conquered," *post Gallos superatos;*

"before the rout of the Romans" becomes *ante Romanos fugatos*. *Post* and *ante* are prepositions governing *Gallos* and *Romanos* in the accusative, and the Participles are in agreement with the nouns.

The Four Parts of a Verb.

As a general rule, then, in Latin you must know four parts before you can conjugate the verb:—

The *Present Indicative*.

The *Perfect Indicative*.

The *Supine*.

The *Present Infinitive*.

This last part tells the Conjugation—First, Second, Third or Fourth. The above four parts in the First Conjugation end as a rule in *-ō*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *-āre*, and it will be sufficient to note merely the irregular formations. Any verb, then, when given in the Present Indicative will easily be turned into the other stems by the dropping of *-o* and the addition of these terminations *-āv*, *-āt*. There are only a few verbs which do not form their stems thus. Two common ones are—

Dō, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, to give (note short *ă*).
Stō, stĕti, stătum, stāre, to stand.

Is, ea, id.

The Latin word for *that*, *those*, is declined as follows:—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Is	ea	id	Eī (ii)	eae	ea
Acc.	Eum	eam	id	Eōs	eas	ea
Gen.	Eius (all genders)			Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Eī (all genders)			Eīs (iīs) (all genders)		
Abl.	Eō	eā	eō	Eīs (iīs) (all genders)		

The forms given in brackets are less common.

When used alone as a *pronoun* this means *he, she, it,* etc., as *Puer eam amat,* the boy loves *her ;* but, *Puer eam puellam amat,* the boy loves *that* girl.

Exercise 13 (*a*).

1. Cum autem Hannibal eam urbem occupaverit, manus dabimus. 2. Jovi optimo maximo hostiam immolatum Romam navigaverat. 3. Post occupatam urbem fines explorabitis. 4. Id factum initio risum spectantibus concitabat. 5. Deinde exercitum in litore collocatum oppugnabunt. 6. Eas hostium manus oppugnaturus magnas copias comparavit. 7. Hostes castra clam oppugnaturos Romani subito fugaverant. 8. Oppida abalienata ut recuperaremus ad Africam navigaveramus. 9. Eum exercitum superatum spectaturi sunt. 10. Quot e magnis eis exercitibus patriam rursus spectaturi erant.

Exercise 13 (*b*).

1. But when the Romans conquer those races they will surrender. 2. He sailed to that island by night to sacrifice victims to Jove most high and holy. 3. After the seizure of the defile they explored the fields. 4. Those actions at first stirred up laughter in the *combatants* (translate by dative of Present Participle of the verb *to fight*). 5. Next he routed the legions stationed on the shore. 6. Being accordingly about to attack Rome he prepared a strong army. 7. He suddenly routed the enemy (when) about-to-attack the camp secretly. 8. For we have sailed to Africa that we may recover the estranged cities. 9. Where are the conquered forces? They are about to seek peace. 10. How many out of that large army are likely to look upon (*specto*) their fatherland again?

Vocabulary 13.

Castra, *-orum*, n....camp (the sing. *Castrum* = fort)
Clam...secretly (adv.)
Collocō, *-āre*...to station
Dĕindĕ...next (adv.)
E, *ex*...out of (*Ex* before vowel or *h*)
Factum, *-i*, n....deed, action
Hostia, *-ae*, f....victim
Immolo, *-are*...to sacrifice
Initio...in the beginning
Initium, *-ii*, n....beginning
Jupiter optimus maximus...Jove most high and holy (acc. *Jovem*, gen. *Jovis*, dat. *Jovi*, abl. *Jove*)
Manūs dăre...to surrender (literally: to give hands)
Quot?...how many? (pronoun)
Recupero, *-are*...to recover
Risus, *-ūs*, m....laughter
Rursus...again (adv.)
Subito...suddenly (adv.)

LESSON XIV.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF VERB.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. —SE, SESE.

We have now finished the *Active Voice* of the First Conjugation verbs, if we except the *Imperative Mood* and *Gerund*. We shall neglect these for the present.

In the Second Conjugation the Present Infinitive ends in *-ēre*, in the Third in *-ĕre* and in the Fourth in *-īre*. You must always find from the Dictionary or Vocabulary to which conjugation a verb belongs before you can conjugate it On pages 211-223 are given Tables of the Tenses of the four conjugations. Before proceeding to do the next Exercise you must learn from these Tables the Present, Imperfect and Future Indicative of each conjugation. Watch carefully the differences in the mode of forming the tenses in each case, and compare the endings frequently. Note these points:—

If you change the *-o* of the endings of the Present Indicative of the First Conjugation into *-eo*, and then change the *a* of the remaining endings into *e*, you get

the *Present Indicative* endings of the Second Conjugation. Compare *moneo* and *amo*. Thus:—

First Conjugation, -o, -as, -at, -amus, -atis, -ant.
Second Conjugation, -eo, -es, -et, -emus, -etis, -ent.

The Present Indicative of the Third Conjugation has *i* for *a* of the First, except in the third person plural, where it has *u*. Thus:—

First Conjugation, -o, -as, -at, -amus, -atis, -ant.
Third Conjugation, -o, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -unt.

The Present Indicative first person singular of the Fourth Conjugation ends in *-iō;* the next four endings are similar to those in the Third, but the third person plural has *-iunt* for *-unt*.

The Imperfect Indicative of all four Conjugations ends in *-bam*, *-bas*, *-bat*, *-bamus*, *-batis*, *-bant*. The First Conjugation has *ā* before these endings, the Second *ē*, the Third *ē* and the Fourth *iē*. Thus: *amābam*, *monēbam*, *regēbam*, *audiēbam*.

The Future of the first two Conjugations ends in *-bo*, *-bis*, *-bit*, etc.; but the First Conjugation has *ā* before these endings, and the second *ē*. The Future of the last two Conjugations ends in *-am*, *-ēs*, *-et*, *-ēmus*, *-ētis*, *-ent;* but the Third adds these directly to the Present stem, while the Fourth inserts an *i* before each.

Note.—Remember to practise yourself in different verbs: do not always confine yourself to *moneō*, *regō*, etc., in learning the conjugations.

Ablative Absolute.

In Latin there is a common construction called the *Ablative Absolute*. Look at these examples:—

Hac pugna pugnata urbem occupavit. This battle having been fought, he seized the city.

Urbibus abaliēnatis Carthaginem oppugnaverunt. The cities having been estranged, they attacked Carthage.

In English the construction is *Nominative Absolute.* It is the construction of words which have no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence: they are not governed by any other word in the sentence—they stand, as it were, alone. English, however, would prefer to say in these sentences: *After this battle,* or *On the completion of this battle; When the cities had been estranged,* or *On the estranging of the cities.* Latin is very fond of the *Ablative Absolute Construction.*

Se, Sese.

Learn this pronoun off by heart.

Acc. *Se* or *sese* Gen. *Sui* Dat. *Sibi* Abl. *Se* or *sese*	These forms are both singular and plural, masculine and feminine. They mean respectively—themselves, himself, herself, itself; of themselves, of himself, etc., etc.

This is called the *Reflexive Pronoun,* because it is used only when the *subject* of the verb is denoted as acting on itself, that is, the action of the verb is bent back (*re* = back, *flecto* = I bend) on its subject.

The enemy are slaying themselves. *Hostes sese interficiunt.*

He commits suicide (adjudges death to himself). *Mortem sibi adsciscit.*

Connected with this pronoun in Latin is the possessive adjective *suus, sua, suum,* his, her, its, which is used only when we are referring to the subject of the sentence. Otherwise *his* would be *ejus.* In fact, however, unless there is some stress on the adjective or pronoun, or unless some ambiguity would arise if it were omitted, Latin does not use possessive adjectives or pronouns at all. Com-

pare Sentences 5 and 8 of Exercise 14 (*a*) for the use of these words, and also the following :—

Patrem suum interfecit. He killed his own father.
Patrem ejus interfecit. He killed his (somebody else's) father.

Exercise 14 (*a*).

1. Magnam pecuniae copiam habemus et semper habebimus. 2. Nunc omnes gentes vincunt et semper vincent. 3. In Hispaniam magnum exercitum ducam. 4. Romanos tertio die videbunt et vincent. 5. Ante ejus adventum et mari et terra male res gerebant. 6. Hamilcar ubi bellum gerit nunquam hostes vincit. 7. Sed extremo prope ad desperationem perveniunt. 8. Oppida Africae valentissima imperio suo tenet. 9. At Hamilcar magnas res secunda gerit fortuna. 10. Hamilcaris perpetuum odium erga Romanos secundum bellum Punicum concitabit.

Exercise 14 (*b*).

1. We were waging war with the Romans many years. 2. We shall see the line of battle of the enemy on the third day. 3. They will conquer and hold all the world beneath their sway. 4. Ye are leading large forces against the Romans. 5. Before the arrival of the Romans we were waging war with-ill-success (*say* badly) by sea and land. 6. When we were waging war we always conquered our enemies. 7. But at last we almost came to despair. 8. They were coming to Rome, the strongest city of Italy. 9. We shall carry out important (great) operations (things) with success (with favourable fortune). 10. With undying hatred for the Romans Hannibal is leading an army into Italy.

Vocabulary 14.

Adventus, *-ūs*, m....arrival
Ante...before (prep. governing acc.)
At...but (conj.)
Desperatio, *-nis*, f....despair (act of despairing)
Duco, *duxi*, *ductum*, *ducĕre*...to lead
Erga...towards, for (prep. governing acc.)
Extrēmō...at last (adv.)
Fortūna, *-ae*, f....fortune
Gero, *gessi*, *gestum*, *gerĕre*...to wage, to carry out
Habeo, *habui*, *habitum*, *habēre*... to have
Malĕ...badly (adv.)
Odium, *ŏdii*, n....hatred
Oppidum, *-i*, n....town
Perpetuus, *-a*, *-um*...undying
Pervenio, *-vēni*, *-ventum*, *-venire* ...to come
Prŏpe...almost (adv.)
Punĭcus, *-a*, *-um*...Punic, Carthaginian
Secundus, *-a*, *-um*...favourable
Teneo, *tenui*, *tentum*, *tenēre*...to hold
Valentissimus, *-a*, *-um*...very strong, strongest
Video, *vīdi*, *vīsum*, *vidēre*...to see
Vinco, *vīci*, *victum*, *vincĕre*...to conquer

LESSON XV.

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.—ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.—HIC, HAEC, HOC.

The three tenses you learned last exercise were all from the Present stem—*am-*, *mon-*, *reg-*, *aud-*.

If in the First Conjugation to this we add *-ans* we get the *Present Participle*—

Am-ans.

Similarly, adding *-ens* to the other three, but inserting *i* before it in the Fourth Conjugation, we get—

Mon-ens, reg-ens, aud-iens
(Genitive) Mon-entis, reg-entis, aud-ientis.

Remember the terminations of the Present Infinitives—*-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ĕre*, *-īre*.

The Perfect Stem.

Whén the verb is regular, to get this stem add in the—

First Conjugation	av	. .	amāv-
Second Conjugation	u	. .	monu-
Third Conjugation	s	. .	rex-
Fourth Conjugation	iv	. .	audīv-

If the verb is irregular consult the Dictionary or Vocabulary, or a table of irregular verbs, and learn the Perfect by heart.

Note in *reg-o* that $g + s$ gives x.

In each case if to this stem we add *-isse* we get the *Perfect Infinitive* :—

Amāv-isse	to have loved
Monu-isse	to have warned, advised
Rex-isse	to have ruled
Audīv-isse	to have heard

The Supine Stem.

The *Supine* must be learned from the Table of Verbs at the end of the volume, and then the stem is got by dropping *-um;* by adding *-u* to this you get the *Second Supine;* by adding *-ūrus* you get the *Future Participle* (which is declined like an adjective) :—

Supine.	Second Supine.			Future Participle.
Amāt-um	gives	amāt-ū	and	amat-ūrus (-a, -um, etc.)
Monit-um	,,	monit-ū	,,	monit-ūrus (-a, -um, etc.)
Rect-um	,,	rect-ū	,,	rect-ūrus (-a, -um, etc.)
Audīt-um	,,	audīt-ū	,,	audīt-ūrus (-a, -um, etc.)

Join to the Future Participle the Present Infinitive of the verb *esse* (to be), and you get the *Future Infinitive* :—

Amaturus esse . . .	to-be about-to-love
Moniturus esse . . .	to-be about-to-advise
Recturus esse . . .	to-be about-to-rule
Auditurus esse . . .	to-be about-to-hear

Consult the Table of Verbs frequently, where all these points are put more concisely.

Accusative and Infinitive.

He says that the Romans { are surrendering / have surrendered / will surrender } their arms to the enemy.

After a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, English usually has a "that" clause, which we call a noun clause; but in Latin a peculiar construction is used, called the **accusative and infinitive**. Thus the subject of each of the above "that" clauses, nominative in English, becomes accusative in Latin; and the verb becomes, though Indicative in English, Infinitive in Latin, while "that" is dropped. The tense used is the tense of the actual words of the speaker. The words used in each case by the speaker were:—

1. The Romans are surrendering. Therefore use here the Present Infinitive.
2. The Romans have surrendered. Therefore use here the Perfect Infinitive.
3. The Romans will surrender. Therefore use here the Future Infinitive.

The three sentences then in Latin are:—

Dīcit Rōmānos arma adversariis { tradere. / tradidisse. / traditūros esse. }

If we had had "he" for "the Romans" and the sentences had been "He says that he is surrendering, has surrendered," etc., the pronoun "he" would have given some trouble. If you had translated it by *eum*, you would have meant "He says that somebody else"; if by *se*, "He says that he himself," etc. The English does not show clearly whether the man's actual words were "I

am surrendering" or "He is surrendering"; the Latin does.

Remember the Future Participle agrees with its subject in gender, number and case. Thus:—

He says that that { man / woman } will surrender { his / her } arms.

Dicit { *eum* / *eam* } *arma* { *traditurum esse.* / *traditurum esse.* }

HIC, HAEC, HOC....this (pronoun and adjective).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Hīc (or hĭc)	haec	hōc	Hī	hae	haec
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hōc	Hōs	has	haec
Gen.	Hūius (all genders)			Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huic (all genders)			Hīs (all genders)		
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc			

This pronoun may be used as an adjective with a noun. Thus:—

(Pronoun) *Hi totam abaliēnavērunt Africam.* These estranged all Africa.

(Adjective) *Hi montes ardui sunt.* These mountains are steep.

Exercise 15 (*a*).

1. Hamilcar se putat hujus belli finem facturum esse. 2. Hic eum putat horum bellorum finem facere. 3. Haec eum putat hoc fecisse. 4. Si hic negaverit se hoc bellum compositurum esse Sicilia decedemus. 5. In Africam veniemus hunc interfectum et Carthaginem deletum. 6. Vettones eum in proelio pugnantem interfecerunt. 7. Adstantes dicent hunc esse fortem virum. 8. Sicilia prima luce se decessuros esse dicunt. 9. Sicilia decessuri cum hoc rege pacem conciliatis. 10. Cras Romam advenient.

Exercise 15 (*b*).

1. He says this man will make an end of this war. 2. He says these men are making an end of this war. 3. These men say those have made an end of these wars. 4. If Catulus refuses to end this war we shall leave Sicily (see Note at end of Vocabulary 15). 5. This man is coming to Africa to end the war and destroy Carthage. 6. The Vettones will slay him while fighting in battle. 7. The bystanders say this woman is brave. 8. He says he will leave Rome to-morrow. 9. On-the-point-of-departure from Sicily he made peace with Catulus. 10. We shall arrive in Rome at daybreak.

Vocabulary 15.

Adstantes...bystanders (nom. mas. plur. partic.)

Adsto, adstiti, adstare...to stand by (no Supine)

Advenio, -vēni, -ventum, -venire... to arrive

Compōno, -posui, -positum, -ponĕre...to settle, to end

Cras...to-morrow (adv.)

Deleo, delēvi, delētum, delēre...to destroy

Decēdo, decessi, decessum, decēdĕre ...to depart, to leave (with the abl.)

Dīco, dixi, dictum, dīcĕre...to say

Facio, fēci, factum, facĕre[1]...to make

Interficio, -fēci, -fectum, -ficĕre[1]... to slay

Puto, -are...to think

Venio, vēni, ventum, venīre...to come.

Note.—In the fourth sentence of Exercise 15 (*b*) say, Catullus denies that he will, etc., and so in like sentences. *Cf.* fourth sentence in Exercise 15 (*a*).

[1] Verbs in *-io* with infinitive in *-ĕre* belong to the Third Conjugation, but are conjugated in the parts from the Present stem like verbs of the Fourth. The Present Imperative usually ends in *e*. *Dico, duco, facio* have, however, Present Imperative *Dic, duc, fac.*

LESSON XVI.

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, FUTURE PERFECT TENSES.—ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.—QUI, QUAE, QUOD.—ADJECTIVES WITH *-īus* IN THE GENITIVE AND *-ī* IN THE DATIVE.—IPSE, -A, -UM.

In each of the conjugations these tenses are formed in exactly the same way from the *Perfect stem.*

The stems are *amav, monu, rex, audiv.*

To these add—

-ī, -istī, -it, -imus, -istis, -ērunt or *-ēre* for the Perfect.
-eram, -erās, -erat, -erāmus, -erātis, -erant for the Pluperfect.
-erō, -erĭs, -erit, -erĭmus, -erĭtis, -erint for the Future Perfect.

Practise yourself by adding these terminations on to various verbs, and so forming the tenses, until you can do so readily.

SOME MORE HINTS ON THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.

In the previous Chapter we made the verb of *saying* Present tense in each case; when this verb is *Past* the difficulty is rather greater. Consider these sentences:—

1. He said that he surrendered.
2. He said that he had surrendered.
3. He said that he would surrender.

In each sentence you must find the actual words of the speaker in order to get the tense of the *Infinitive* to use. You must try to find out the exact words which the speaker said.

Thus, in sentence 1 the speaker said, either

(*a*) I surrender (*or* He surrenders); *or*
(*b*) I surrendered (*or* He surrendered).

If (*a*) gives the actual words used, use the *Present Infinitive.*

If (*b*) rather gives the actual words used, use the *Perfect Infinitive.* The English is not clear: you can tell which was used only by the sense. As far as the words go, either meaning may be implied.

So, when translating from Latin, after a Past tense of a verb of *saying* the Present and Perfect Infinitive are both translated by the form used in sentence 1.

In sentence 2 the actual words were *I have surrendered:* therefore translate this by the *Perfect Infinitive.*

In sentence 3 the actual words were *I shall surrender:* therefore translate this by the *Future Infinitive.*

The Latin of each is then :—

1. *Dixit se (eum) arma tradere* or *tradidisse.*
2. *Dixit se arma tradidisse.*
3. *Dixit se arma traditurum esse.*

QUI, QUAE, QUOD.

The Relative Pronoun, *who, which, that,* etc., is declined as follows in Latin. You will observe all these pronouns we have given are irregular in declension, yet have similarities worth remarking.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Quī	quae	quod	Quī	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quod	Quōs	quas	quae
Gen.	Cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cuī	cuī	cuī	Quibus	quibus	quibus
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō			

This pronoun is also used as an adjective with a noun.

ADJECTIVES WITH *-ĭus* IN THE GENITIVE AND *-ĭ* IN THE DATIVE.

This is a class of adjectives which, from the terminations of the nominative singular, you would expect to

belong to Class I., and really do belong in declension to this class except in the genitive and dative singular. These cases instead of ending in *-i*, *-ae*, *-i* and *-o*, *-ae*, *-o*, have *-īus* and *-ī*. Thus *solus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj. = *alone*, is declined as follows :—

	Singular.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Sol-us	-a	-um
Acc.	Sol-um	-am	-um
Gen.	Sol-īus (all genders)		
Dat.	Sol-ī (all genders)		
Abl.	Sol-ō	-ā	-ō

The plural is quite regular, like *bonus*.

Similarly are declined *unus*, one ; *totus*, whole ; *ullus*, any ; *nullus*, not any, no one ; *àlter*, one of two ; *uter ?* which of two ? *neuter*, neither of two.

(*Uter* and *neuter* are like *ater* in the nominative—*uter*, *utra*, *utrum*. *Alter* is like *asper* in the nominative—*alter*, *altera*, *alterum*.)

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

Ipse, a pronoun meaning "-self," also used like an adjective, is declined exactly like *solus*, but has *-e* instead of *-us* in the nominative masculine singular. Thus, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, etc.

Puer ipse cantat. The boy himself sings.
Ipsi cantamus. We ourselves are singing.

It simply emphasises the noun or pronoun to which it refers. In the first sentence it is an adjective and emphasises *puer ;* in the second it is a pronoun and emphasises the subject (*we*) of *cantamus*, to which it refers.

Exercise 16 (*a*).

1. Ipsi diximus eos non belli finem facturos esse. 2. Hannibal ipse dixerat se solum hoc bellum composuisse.

3. Si dixeritis eos belli finem facturos Carthaginem prima luce navigabunt. 4. Ipsi putavistis hos magno cum dedecore domum rediisse. 5. Qui Corinthum veniunt, statuas inspiciunt. 6. Ii ipsi dixerunt se solos a muris Carthaginis hostes removisse. 7. Neuter dixerat se captivos occidere. 8. Alter putavit eos haec dicere; alter negavit. 9. Videratis eum quem Catulus apud Aegates insulas superavit. 10. Uter dixit Caesarem eis solis provincias dedisse?

Exercise 16 (*b*).

1. Catulus himself had said he would not end the war. 2. Catulus alone had said he himself had ended the war. 3. If Catulus says he will end the war, we shall sail at once to Rome. 4. We ourselves had thought they were about to return home alone with great disgrace. 5. Those who come to Rome look at the beautiful buildings. 6. Hannibal himself said he alone had removed the enemy from the walls of Carthage. 7. Which-of-the-two said the Romans were slaying the captives? 8. The one said this was so: the other said-it-was-not-so (denied). 9. We had seen the man who (see Note at end of Vocabulary 16) had restored to his country the strongest towns in Africa (*say* of Africa). 10. Neither said that Caesar gave this promise to him alone.

Vocabulary 16.

Aedificium, *-ii*, n....building
Alter . . . *alter*...the one . . . the other
Captivus, *-i*, m....captive
Dedecus, *-oris*, n....disgrace
Inspicio, *inspexi*, *inspectum*, *inspicĕre*...to look at, to examine (see Note at end of Vocabulary 15)
Ita (*ĭta*)...so (adv.)
Occīdo, *occīdi*, *occīsum*, *occīdĕre* ...to kill
Patria, *-ae*, f....country (in the sense of fatherland)
Provincia, *-ae*, f....province
Redīre, *rediisse*[1]...to return, to have returned
Removeo, *-mōvi*, *-mōtum*, *-movēre* ...to remove
Rēstĭtŭo, *-stitui*, *-stitūtum*, *-stituĕre*...to restore

[1] Neglect the other parts for the present. The verb is irregular.

Note.—As in the ninth sentence of Exercise 16 (*a*), "the man who" is always rendered in Latin by *is . . . qui*, he . . . who.

LESSON XVII.

Present and Imperfect Subjunctive.—Ut Consecutive.—Ille, Iste.

For this lesson you must learn the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of the verbs of each conjugation. Learn these by rote from the table, but observe the following points :—

1. The First Conjugation Present Subjunctive ends in *-em*, *-ēs*, *-et*, *-ēmus*, *-ētis*, *-ent*.

2. Insert *a* after *e* and you get the endings of the Present Subjunctive of the Second Conjugation : *-eam*, *-eās*, *-eat*, *-eāmus*, *-eātis*, *-eant*.

3. Change the *e* of the First Conjugation into *a* and you get the endings in the Third : *-am*, *-ās*, *-at*, *-āmus*, *-ātis*, *-ant*.

4. Insert *i* before these and you get the endings in the Fourth : *-iam*, *-iās*, *-iat*, *-iāmus*, *-iātis*, *-iant*.

Imperfect Subjunctive.

This is one of the easiest tenses. In each conjugation it is the Present Infinitive with the personal endings added on, thus :—

Amāre
Monēre
Regĕre
Audīre } *-m*, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*.

Ut Consecutive.

1. He is so bold that he is attacking Catulus.
Tam ferox est ut Catulum oppugnet.

2. He was so bold that he was attacking Catulus.
Adeo ferox erat ut Catulum oppugnaret.

3. He was so bold that he attacked Catulus.
Adeo ferox erat ut Catulum oppugnaverit.

In each sentence here the "that" clause expresses a result or consequence. In Latin such a clause is introduced by *ut* = that, and always has its verb in the *Subjunctive*. The next point to decide is which tense of the *Subjunctive* to use. You remember in *final clauses* you could only use the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive: here any tense is possible according to the sense. Thus, in the first sentence the result is an action in the present: therefore the tense of the *Subjunctive* is *Present*. In the second the result was a continuous action in the past: therefore the *Imperfect Subjunctive* is the tense. In the third the result was an *act* in the past: therefore use the *Perfect Subjunctive*. You need not consider the tense of the verb in the first or principal clause at all: all you need look to is the actual meaning of the verb. The rule given by Dean Bradley is: *Use the tense you would use if the verb were, as in English, in the Indicative Mood.*

Do not confuse these clauses with *Final Clauses*. In *Final Clauses* "that" means "in order that". In the consecutive clauses it means "in such a way that," or "to such an extent that," and has almost always an adverb like *ita, adeo* or *sic* (all meaning *so*) in the main clause to prepare you for it. If the consecutive clause were negative (that is, had a "not" in it) you would use *ut non*, never *ne*. (See also Note at end of Vocabulary 17.)

ILLE, ISTE.

Turn back now and make sure of the declension of the adjectives with *-ius* and *-i* in the Genitive and Dative. Then learn these two pronouns :—

	Singular.				Singular.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ille	illa	illud	Nom.	Iste	ista	istud

istam istud
ıll genders)
genders)
istā istō
e, bona, etc.
eans "that
ıs as *adjec-*
c.
ook of yours.
lam salutis
defenderat
n esse. 3.
ɔriae spem
nt se non
lum gerunt
s fortitudo
ıt (*or* -aret).
esse falsa.
ırsit ut, O
adeo ferox
andem eos
y that the
ı is defend-

1. He is
Tam fero
2. He wa
Adeo fero
3. He wa
Adeo fero

In each sent
result or conse
duced by *ut* =
junctive. The
Subjunctive to
could only use t
any tense is po
first sentence t
fore the tense o
the result was
the *Imperfect* S
result was an
Subjunctive.
in the first or p
is the actual
Dean Bradley i
were, as in Eng

Do not confu
Final Clauses
consecutive cla
"to such an
adverb like *ita*, *adeo* or *sic* (all meaning *so*) in the main clause to prepare you for it. If the consecutive clause were negative (that is, had a "not" in it) you would use *ut non*, never *ne*. (See also Note at end of Vocabulary 17.)

Ille, Iste.

Turn back now and make sure of the declension of the adjectives with *-ius* and *-i* in the Genitive and Dative. Then learn these two pronouns :—

	Singular.				Singular.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ille	illa	illud	Nom.	Iste	ista	istud
Acc.	Illum	illam	illud	Acc.	Istum	istam	istud
Gen.	Illīus (all genders)			Gen.	Istīus (all genders)		
Dat.	Illī (all genders)			Dat.	Istī (all genders)		
Abl.	Illō	illā	illō	Abl.	Istō	istā	istō

In the plural both are declined like *boni, bonae, bona*, etc.

Ille means "that yonder" near *him; Iste* means "that near *you*". They can both be used with nouns as *adjectives*, or alone as pronouns meaning *he, him*, etc.

Illum librum legi. I have read that book yonder.
Istum librum legi. I have read that book of yours.
Ille istum librum legit. Yon man (*he*) has read that book of yours.

Exercise 17 (*a*).

1. Romam tanta ferocia oppugnamus ut nullam salutis spem habeatis. 2. Ille tam ferociter Erycem defenderat ut Marcellus diceret se eum nunquam capturum esse. 3. Istam urbem sic defenditis ut nullam victoriae spem habeamus. 4. Adeo feroces erant ut dicerent se non urbem traditurus esse. 5. Ita male Poeni bellum gerunt ut oppida totius Africae amittant. 6. Istius fortitudo gentis tanta erat ut semper adversarios superarent (*or* -aret). 7. Adeo sapiens erat ille ut intellegeret haec esse falsa. 8. Tantum in Africa intestinum bellum exarsit ut, O Poeni, nunc omnia oppida amittatis. 9. Neuter adeo ferox est ut cum illo pugnet. 10. Diximus nunc tandem eos imperium totius Africae amisisse.

Exercise 17 (*b*).

1. Yon man was defending Eryx so bravely that the Romans had no hope of success. 2. That man is defend-

ing Eryx with such bravery that the Romans do not think they will take it. 3. He was defending your city in such a manner that the Romans had no hope of victory. 4. He was so bold as to say (*say* that he was saying) he would not surrender yon town. 5. The Romans were waging war so badly that they were losing all their towns. 6. The bravery of that man was so great that he used to conquer all his opponents. 7. He is so wise that he sees these things are false. 8. So great a war broke out that the Carthaginians were losing the towns of Africa. 9. Which of the two is bold enough to fight with that man yonder (*say* is so bold that he may fight)? 10. He said they had lost the empire of all Africa.

Vocabulary 17.

Amitto, amīsi, amissum, amittĕre ...to lose
Capio, cēpi, captum, capĕre[1]...to take, to capture
Defendo, defendi, defensum, defendĕre...to defend
Exardesco, exarsi, exarsum, exardescĕre...to blaze up, to break out
Falsus, -a, -um...false
erōciter...boldly, with bravery (adv.)
Ferox, ferōcis...bold (one termination)
Fortitūdo, -inis, f....bravery
Intellego, intellexi, intellectum, intellegĕre...to perceive, to see
Intestīnus, -a, -um...internal
Marcellus, -i, m....Marcellus
Nunc tandem...now at length (adv.)
Salus, salūtis, f....safety
Sapiens, sapientis...wise (adj.)
Tantus, -a, -um...so great
Trado, tradidi, traditum, tradĕre ...to surrender, to hand over
Tuus, -a, -um...your (when "you" is singular)
Vester, -ra, -rum...your (when "you" is plural)

Note.—It may be as well here to say something of the Negative and Negative sentences. If there is a "not" in a sentence, or a "no," or a word compounded of either, such as "none," "no one," "nor," "neither," we say these sentences are negative; and "not" we call the

[1] See footnote to Vocabulary 15.

Negative, the others being negative words. Note carefully that in Final sentences "that not" is *nē*, in Consecutive sentences *ut nōn*.

LESSON XVIII.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—ALIUS.—THE GERUND.

With these two tenses we complete the *Active* Voice of the verb, with the exception already mentioned of the Imperative and Gerund. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive both come from the same stem, the *Perfect*.

First Conjugation . . .	*Amav*
Second Conjugation . . .	*Monu*
Third Conjugation . . .	*Rex*
Fourth Conjugation . . .	*Audiv*

To these you add the same endings in each case:—

For the *Perfect*...*-erim*, *-eris*, *-erit*, *-erimus*, *-eritis*, *-erint*.

For the *Pluperfect*...*-issem*, *-issēs*, *-isset*, *-issēmus*, *issētis*, *issent*.

Re-read now the last chapter, on Consecutive clauses, and the lesson (XII.) on *Cum* with the Subjunctive when it translates "when" with a past tense in English.

ALIUS, ALIA, ALIUD.

The Latin word for "other" is *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*. Compare this with *ille*, *illa*, *illud* and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*. It is declined thus:—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Alius	alia	aliud	Aliī	aliae	alia
Acc.	Alium	aliam	aliud	Aliōs	aliās	alia
Gen.	Alīus	alīus	alīus	Aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	Aliī	aliī	aliī	Aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Abl.	Aliō	aliā	aliō			

The Gerund.

Am-andum *Mon-endum* *Reg-endum* *Aud-iendum*

Each is declined like a neuter noun of the Second Declension—*amandum*, *-i*, *-o*, *-o*, etc.

The Gerund is always formed from the Present stem :—

In the	First	Conjugation	by adding	*-andum.*
,,	Second	,,	,,	*-endum.*
,,	Third	,,	,,	*-endum.*
,,	Fourth	,,	,,	*-iendum.*

It is a *verbal noun*, that is—it is declined like a noun, but acts in certain ways like a verb. For instance, it is modified by adverbs and can govern a case. It is translated by the corresponding English noun in "ing"—loving, advising, ruling, hearing.

Haec sunt utilia ad scribendum.
These things are useful for writing.
Nullum locum nocendi eis dedit.
He gave them no opportunity (place) of injuring.

In the following sentence it has an adverb with it :—

Haec sunt utilia ad bene vivendum.
These things are useful for living well (for a good life).

In this one it governs a case :—

Parcendo hostibus vincēmus.
By sparing the enemy we shall conquer.

Here *parcendo* (from the verb *parcĕre*, to spare) governs a *dative*, because *parcere* governs a *dative*.

Exercise 18 (*a*).

1. Illo tempore tam magnopere timebamus ut auxilia ab Romanis petiverimus atque impetraverimus. 2. Cum Poeni in Sicilia omnia amisissent pacem conciliaverunt. 3. Erycem tanta fortitudine defendebant ut Romani de

victoria desperarent. 4. Cum, O Romani, belli finem facere statuissetis, rem Regulo permisistis. 5. Adeo cupiditate bellandi flagrabat ut recusaverit Sicilia decedere. 6. Alii studio pugnandi flagrabant, alii decedendi. 7. Cum haec inutilia ad bene vivendum cognovissent abjecerunt. 8. Tot mercenarii milites desciverunt ut Poeni desperent. 9. Aliis studium bellandi permittitis. 10. Parcendo vitae aliorum amorem et amicitiam conciliabitis.

Exercise 18 (*b*).

1. The Carthaginians were so terrified that they asked aid even from the Romans and obtained it. 2. Since, O Carthaginians, ye had lost everything in Sicily ye made peace. 3. You defended Eryx so bravely that we retreated. 4. When they resolved to make an end of the war they entrusted the business to Hamilcar. 5. He was so fired with the lust for war that he refused to leave Sicily. 6. Some were ablaze with the desire of ruling, others with the desire for (of) money. 7. When he discovered these things were useless for fighting he destroyed them. 8. So many mercenaries had revolted that the Carthaginians were in despair. 9. Let-us-leave[1] to others the desire for warfare (of warring). 10. By sparing the property of others we shall win their love.

Vocabulary 18.

Abicio, abiēci, abiectum, abicĕre[2] ...to cast away

Benĕ...well (adv.)

Bona, -orum, n....property (plural of *bonus*)

Cognosco, cognōvi, cognĭtum, cognoscere...to discover, to know

Descisco, descīvi, descītum, desciscĕre...to revolt

[1] "Let us leave" is first person plural Present Subjunctive, a common meaning.

[2] See footnote to Vocabulary 15.

Despēro, despēravi, despēratum, despērare...to despair
Etiam...even (adv.)
Inutilis, -e...useless
Magnopere...greatly (adv.)
Mercenarius, -a, -um...mercenary
Perdo, perdidi, perdĭtum, perdĕre ...to destroy
Permitto, -mīsi, -missum, -mittĕre ...to entrust
Peto, petīvi (or *petii*), *petītum, petĕre*...to seek
Regulus, -i, m....Regulus (a famous Roman)
Statuo, stātui, statūtum, statuĕre ...to resolve
Studium, -ii, n....desire
Timeo, timui, timēre...to be afraid
Tot...so many (indeclinable pron.)
Vīta, -ae, f....life
Vīvo, vixi, victum, vīvĕre...to live

LESSON XIX.

PERFECT TENSES OF THE PASSIVE AND SUM, ETC.—*A* AND ABLATIVE.

We cannot take the verb in the passive until we know the conjugation of the verb *esse*, "to be". This is an irregular verb, so called because it does not form its tenses and persons according to the rules laid down for the four conjugations previously given. Turn to the Table now (page 211), and learn the tenses that come from the Present stem, both *Indicative* and *Subjunctive*. Note the following points:—

1. The *Present Indicative* is very irregular.

2. The *Imperfect Indicative* is just the terminations and nothing more of the Pluperfect Active of the regular verb, *eram, eras, erat*, etc.

3. The *Future Indicative* is just the Future Perfect terminations of the regular verb, but instead of *erint* we have *erunt*.

4. The *Imperfect Subjunctive* is the Pluperfect Subjunctive endings of the regular verb, with *e* for *i*.

These hints should aid your memory considerably. If now we take the *Supine stem* in each Conjugation—

Amatum Monitum Rectum Auditum

and change the final *m* into *s*, we get the *Past Participle Passive*—

Amātus, -a, -um . .	Having been loved
Monĭtus, -a, -um . .	Having been warned (or advised)
Rectus, -a, -um . .	Having been ruled
Audītus, -a, -um . .	Having been heard

declined in each case like an adjective of the first class. If you combine this with the Present Indicative of ***sum*** you get the *Perfect Indicative Passive*—

Amātus (-a, -um) sum	I have been loved *or* I was loved
Amātus (-a, -um) es	Thou hast been loved *or* thou wast loved
Amātus (-a, -um) est	He has been loved *or* he was loved
Amāti (-ae, -a) sumus	We have been loved *or* we were loved
Amāti (-ae, -a) estis	You have been loved *or* you were loved
Amāti (-ae, -a) sunt	They have been loved *or* they were loved

If you combine it with the Imperfect Indicative of ***sum*** you get the *Pluperfect Indicative Passive*—

Amātus (-a, -um) eram . .	I had been loved
Amātus (-a, -um) eras . .	Thou hadst been loved
Amātus (-a, -um) erat . .	He had been loved
Amāti (-ae, -a) eramus . .	We had been loved
Amāti (-ae, -a) eratis . .	You had been loved
Amāti (-ae, -a) erant . .	They had been loved

If you combine it with the Future of ***sum*** you get the *Future Perfect Indicative Passive*—

Amatus (-a, -um) erō . .	I shall have been loved
Amatus (-a, -um) eris . .	Thou wilt have been loved
Amatus (-a, -um) erit . .	He will have been loved
Amati (-ae, -a) erimus . .	We shall have been loved
Amati (-ae, -a) eritis . .	You will have been loved
Amati (-ae, -a) erunt . .	They will have been loved

In a similar way you may form the corresponding Passive tenses in the other four Conjugations (see the Table, page

218, etc). You observe that the subject of the verb is in all these cases being acted on. The forms of the verb which show that the subject is being acted on are called the *Passive* voice of the verb (Latin *patior*, to suffer). Remember you must make *amatus*, or whatever Perfect Participle you are using, agree with the subject of the verb in gender, number and case (always nominative, of course).

Ablative of the Living Agent.

Caesar a Bruto pugione interfectus est.
Caesar was slain by Brutus with a dagger.

The *living* agent after a Passive verb is put in the ablative case with the prepositions *a* or *ab;* the instrument is put in the simple ablative.

Exercise 19 (*a*).

1. Cum in Sicilia essemus ab urbe discessit. 2. Causa spectandi statuas diu Athenis illi erant. 3. Cæsar ubi Romae erit (see Note at end of Vocabulary 19) leges conservabit. 4. Tunc festinabant ut Romae illo die essent. 5. Ille pugnans a Gallo ingenti corpore occisus est. 6. Illi captivi post pugnam Cannensem ab Hannibale occisi erant. 7. Tunc quidem Graecia decedemus ubi ab Romanis victi erimus. 8. Si hoc proelio victi erunt Carthaginienses, in magno periculo erunt. 9. Post subactas bellicosissimas gentes a servo in itinere interfectus est. 10. Femina a servo cui multa dona dederat prodita est.

Exercise 19 (*b*).

1. Just now there are many Carthaginians in Sicily. 2. We were a long time at Rome. 3. If I am (see Note at end of Vocabulary 19) at Rome I shall come to see you.

4. When you are (see Note at end of Vocabulary 19) at Rome you will see the Capitol. 5. He is hastening that he may be at Rome on that day. 6. Cassius was slain after the battle by his slave with a dagger. 7. Antonius had been loved by Cleopatra. 8. When they are defeated by the Romans they will certainly retire from Sicily. 9. If we are defeated in this battle by Scipio we shall certainly be in great danger. 10. When the mercenaries had revolted Carthage was in great peril.

Vocabulary 19.

Bellicōsissimus, -a, -um...very warlike, most warlike
Cannensis, -e...at Cannae (literally: belonging to Cannae, a town in Italy) (adj.)
Capitōlium, -ii, n....the Capitol
Discēdo, -cessi, -cessum, -cēdĕre... to depart
Diu...long, for a long time (adv.)
Femĭna, -ae, f....woman
Festīno, -avi, -atum, -are...to hasten
Graecia, -ae, f....Greece
Ingens, ingentis...huge
Iter, itinĕris, n....journey
Lex, lēgis, f....law
Prōdo, -didi, -dĭtum, -dĕre...to betray
Profecto...certainly (adv.)
Pugiō, pugiōnis, m....dagger
Pugna, -ae, f....battle
Servus, -i, m....slave
Subigo, subēgi, subactum, subigĕre...to subdue
Tunc quidem...just then, then indeed (adv.)

Note.—In the third sentence of Exercise 19 (*a*), and in the third and fourth of Exercise 19 (*b*), note that the meaning is: "When Cæsar shall be," not "shall have been"; "If I shall be" and "When you shall be," not "If I shall have been" and "When you shall have been".

LESSON XX.

Perfect Tenses of Sum.—Third Person Singular Passive of Verbs.—Compounds of Sum.

The tenses of the verb *esse* (to be) which come from the Perfect stem (which is *fu-*) are formed quite regularly. You merely add the terminations you have learned already for these tenses to this stem *fu-*. Turn now to the table of the verb *esse* and learn these before going further.

Note that there is no Supine in the verb *to be:* but there is a Future Participle, *futūrus, -a, -um,* "about to be". Add *esse* (to be) to this and you form the Future Infinitive, *futurus esse,* "to be about to be".

General Hint on the Passive Voice.

One general hint about the Passive Voice of the regular verbs may be given here. If to the third person singular and plural of the tenses formed from the Present stem you add *-ur* you get the corresponding Passive form in each case. Thus, *amat* means "he loves," *amatur* "he is loved"; so *amant, amantur.* And again *amābat* means "he was loving," *amābatur* "he was being loved"; so *amābant, amābantur.* And so you may form this person in all the tenses (Indicative and Subjunctive) formed from the *Present stem* in each Conjugation. (Consult the tables for illustrations.) So, for example, if you wish to form the third person singular Imperfect Subjunctive Passive of *audio,* find the Active and add *-ur;* thus, *audiret, audiretur. Observe* this holds good only in the third person singular and in the third person plural.

Once you have mastered *sum* you can conjugate a good many verbs without any difficulty, as *sum* forms many

compounds. These compounds, it is worth remembering, usually take a *dative* after them. Two common ones are *prōsum*, "I benefit, I do good to," and *praesum*, "I am at the head of". These are simply *sum* with the prefixes *pro* and *prae*. However, in *prosum* (and in *prosum* only), if the *o* of *pro* is followed by an *e* you insert a *d* between the two. Thus, *prodes*, *prodest*; but *profui*, *prosunt*, and so on.

Exercitui praefuit or *praeerat*. He was at the head of the army.
Rei publicae proderat. He used to do good to the State.

Exercise 20 (*a*).

1. Erycem sic defendimus ut bellum eo loco gestum esse non videretur. 2. Tanta bella tum exarserunt ut hae urbes paene delerentur. 3. Cum centum milia facta essent militum mercenariorum, a muris Karthaginis eos removit. 4. Illa urbs maximo barbarorum numero obsidebatur. 5. Tam ferociter pugnaverunt ut hostes expellerentur. 6. Locorum angustiis clausae feminae fame ac morbo interficiebantur. 7. Romae Hannibal fuit, non Romani Carthagine. 8. Ante urbem ab Hispanis obsessam magnus Poenorum numerus interfectus est. 9. Fuerant sapientes, fortes, bellicosi, omnibus in rebus satis periti. 10. Eis malis adeo sunt mulieres perterritae ut auxilium petierint.

Exercise 20 (*b*).

1. He defended Eryx in such a manner that he made an end of the war in that place. 2. So great a war had arisen that Carthage was never in like danger. 3. Since a hundred thousand of armed men had been brought together (*say* had been made: *facio*) he resolved to attack the enemy. 4. Italy was being harassed by a large

number of the enemy. 5. So fiercely did they fight that the town was preserved. 6. Shut in by the narrowness of the position (*say* places), more were slain by famine than by the steel. 7. Ye[1] have been at Rome, but we[1] have not been in Greece. 8. Before the capture of the city (*say*, Before the city taken: *capio*) by the enemy, a large number of them was slain. 9. I had been for many years in Corinth for the purpose of seeing the statues. 10. They were so terrified by these woes that they surrendered.

Vocabulary 20.

Angustiae, *-arum*, f....narrowness (narrow places, straits)
Barbărus, *-i*, m....barbarian
Centum...a hundred (numeral adj., not declined)
Claudo, *clausi*, *clausum*, *claudĕre* ...to shut in
Expello, *-puli*, *-pulsum*, *-pellĕre*... to drive out
Fames, *famis*, f....famine, hunger
Loca, *-orum*, n. pl....places, position
Mala, *-orum*, n. pl....ills
Malus, *-a*, *-um*...bad
Milia, *-ium*, n. pl....thousands (noun)
Morbus, *-i*, m....disease
Mulier, *-eris*, f....woman
Obsideo, *-sēdi*, *-sessum*, *-sidēre*... to besiege
Paene...almost (adv.)
Perītus, *-a*, *-um*...skilled
Perterreo, *-terrui*, *-territum*, *-terrēre*...to terrify
Plures, *plura*...more (adj.)
Satis...enough, sufficiently (adv.)
Similis, *-e*...like (adj.)
Vexo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-āre*...to harass

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN TRANSLATION.

We are now ready to begin to read a piece of real Latin, written by a Roman. We shall take two short passages from the writings of a well-known Roman historian, called Cornelius Nepos. He lived at the same

[1] The pronouns are here emphatic by contrast and are therefore inserted in Latin. Ye = *vos;* we = *nos.*

time as Cicero and Julius Cæsar, those two famous Romans, and was in his prime about fifty years before the birth of Christ. He wrote a book on the Lives of Famous Men, treating of both Romans and foreigners. From this book we have chosen the Lives of Hamilcar and Hannibal, father and son. These two men belonged to Carthage, a large town on the north coast of Africa, which for long disputed with Rome the empire of the Mediterranean. In the first war between the two States Hamilcar was the Carthaginian leader; in the second, Hannibal. The latter is one of the most famous generals of all time, and almost succeeded in destroying Rome and her Empire.

HINTS FOR TRANSLATION.

Look first for a verb in the Indicative Mood; this is usually found at or near the end of the sentence. See whether this is singular or plural, and then look for the subject, which of course will be a noun or pronoun in the Nominative Case, and singular or plural according as the verb is singular or plural. The subject is usually near the beginning of the sentence. From the meaning of the verb (which you will find, if you do not know it already, in the general Vocabulary at the end of the book) you will be able to tell if it requires an object. If it does, look for this next. The object will be a noun or pronoun in the Accusative Case. You will notice, as a general rule in Latin, at the beginning of each clause a word, usually a conjunction or relative pronoun, joining the sentence to the preceding one. With the nouns in the nominative or accusative there may be adjectives in agreement. Removing these four things, connective, nominative or subject (with adjectives), accusative or object (with adjectives), and verb, some words or phrases may be

left. These are usually nouns and adjectives in the ablative, dative or genitive. The first two are nearly always connected with the verb; the genitive is more commonly connected with some noun. Thus the ablative, from what you know already, may tell the time at which the action of the verb took place, the place where it occurred, or the means by which it was performed. The genitive often describes some quality of the thing or person named by the noun—*vir summi ingenii*, a man of the greatest ability. The dative is usually closely connected with some verb.

Now let us tackle, with these hints, the first sentence in the passage No. 1 given below:—

You have to look to the second last word for the verb—*coepit*. *Praeesse* is of course a verb, but you will at once see it is not Indicative Mood. *Coepit* is third person singular (ending in *-it*). Looking up the Vocabulary you find it is Perfect tense and means "began". *Coepit* then is third person singular Perfect Indicative. A glance at the beginning presents *Hamilcar* as the first nominative; but in quick succession you get *filius*, *Barca*, *Karthaginiensis* all evidently Nominative Case. Here then are four nominatives, four subjects to the verb! Not so: the three later nominatives must be in apposition, else the verb would be plural, for two or more singular nominatives, as in English, require a verb in the plural. You now translate *Hamilcar coepit*, "Hamilcar began," and you feel you require an object, to tell you what he began; but on looking you find no noun in the Accusative Case. The word *praeesse* gets us out of the difficulty. Very often a verb which you feel requires an object in the Accusative Case takes an Infinitive to fill out its meaning. Translating *praeesse* now you get, "Hamilcar began to be in command". The remainder of the sentence consists of

three phrases, *primo Poenico bello*, *temporibus extremis*, *in Sicilia*; with an adverb *admodum*, a nominative *adulescentulus*, an ablative *cognomine*, and a dative *exercitui*. *Adulescentulus* must go with the subject, and must be a nominative in apposition. The first two phrases may be ablative or dative: you will find they cannot be translated as datives. Try them with "to" or "for" after the verb *coepit:* "They began to the last times," "to the first Punic war". This makes no sense. They must then be ablatives. Try them as Ablatives of Time: "Hamilcar, in the first Punic war, but in the last times, began to be in command". This gives some sense, so we go on. *In Sicilia* offers no difficulty: it means "in Sicily," *in*, the preposition, taking the Ablative Case. *Cognomine* is the ablative singular of *cognomen*, "a surname". If you try it as denoting point of time, or place where, you will fail to make sense. As descriptive ablative it will be equally obscure, and it cannot be that without an adjective. But you may remember a few examples in the preceding exercises of the Ablative of Respect: this would translate "Barca, as regards surname," that is, "Barca by name". The Vocabulary tells you *admodum* is an adverb, meaning "very," "quite". It goes then with a *verb*, *adjective* or *adverb*. It cannot go with *extremis*, because a comma separates them. It must then go with *adulescentulus*, which is practically an adjective: "quite a young man" gives good sense. If it went with the verbs *praeesse* or *coepit*, it would be placed nearer them. *Exercitui* alone remains, and you remember *praeesse* governs a dative (being a compound of *sum*). This then will naturally be dative after *praeesse*. Your sentence now runs:—

"Hamilcar, son of Hannibal, by surname Barca, a Karthaginian, in the first Punic War, but in the last times

(*or* days), quite a young man, began in Sicily to be in command of the army."

Now all the passages, and all Latin sentences in fact, must be treated carefully after this manner. The process is slow at first; but, if faithfully followed out, it soon makes the work very easy, and is the only way to ensure accuracy. Pay particular attention to the endings of the words: they are the most important parts of words in Latin. Without them you could do nothing: a sentence would at once, deprived of them, become nonsense. Never pass a noun without being able to tell what case it is in and why it is in that case. Never pass a verb without telling its mood, number and tense. Above all, never be in a hurry: always take plenty of time to the sentence you are at. Look on it as a puzzle which has a neat and interesting solution. Do not worry about it. If you find a sentence beats you, pass on to the next one, and return to the difficulty, when the light of the remainder of the passage has been thrown on it. Never write nonsense as a translation, or anything which you do not understand *yourself*. The passages *all* have a meaning. After you have done your best and think your version is fairly correct, turn to the Key at the end of the book and compare your translation with it. If you use this Key to *solve* the difficulties you will never be anything in Latin. You will remain in the state of the man who never tries to swim without the swimming belt. Two translations will be given at first—one very close to the Latin, not proper English at all; the other rather freer and more like what an Englishman would write. If you have not exactly the same translation as the Key, you are not necessarily wrong. See if the *meaning* is the same in your copy and in the Key. There is always a variety of translations for any passage in any language.

No special vocabularies will be given now. You must make your own vocabulary. This is the plan you ought to adopt in all your future reading. When a word occurs which you do not know, or a phrase which you think worth remembering, jot it down in a special note-book. This consultation of the general Vocabulary at the end will prepare you for the use of a dictionary after you have finished this book and started to read for yourself.

Passage No. 1.

Life of Hamilcar.

Hamilcar, Hannibalis filius, cognomine Barca, Karthaginiensis, primo Poenico bello, sed temporibus *extremis*, admodum adulescentulus in Sicilia praeesse coepit exercitui. *cum* ante eius adventum et mari et terra male res *gererentur* Karthaginiensium, ipse, ubi adfuit, numquam *hosti* cessit neque locum nocendi dedit, saepeque e contrario *occasione data* lacessivit semperque *superior* discessit. *quo facto*, cum paene omnia in Sicilia Poeni amisissent, ille Erycem sic defendit, *ut* bellum eo loco gestum non *videretur*. interim Karthaginienses classe apud insulas Aegates a C. Lutatio, consule Romanorum, superati,[1] statuerunt[2] belli facere finem eamque rem arbitrio permiserunt Hamilcaris.

There is a Note in the Key on the words in Italics.

[1] *Superati classe*, "defeated by a fleet".
[2] *Statuo* takes the Infinitive after it.

LESSON XXI.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—GERUND DENOTING NECESSITY.

These are tenses formed from the Present Stem. They are each formed from the Active in the same way.

To the first person singular ending in a vowel add *r*. Thus *amo*, Active; *amor*, Passive. When ending in *m* change *m* into *r*—*amābam*, *amābar*.

For the second person singular change *s* into *ris* or *re*—*amās*, *amāris* or *amāre*.

For the third person singular (as explained in Lesson XX.) add *ur*—*amat*, *amātur*.

For the first person plural change *s* into *r*—*amāmus*, *amāmur*.

For the second person plural change *tis* into *mini*—*amātis*, *amāminī*.

For the third person plural (as explained in Lesson XX.) add *ur*—*amant*, *amantur*.

Thus also—

Moneō *gives* moneor;	mones *gives* monēris *or* monēre, etc.
Regō *gives* regor;	regis *gives* regĕris *or* regĕre, etc.
Audiō *gives* audior;	audīs *gives* audīris *or* audīre, etc.

In the second person singular Present Indicative of the Third Conjugation you find *regĕris* where you expect *regĭris*, and in the second person singular Future Indicative of the First and Second Conjugation *amāberis* where you expect *amabiris*, and *monēbĕris* where you expect *monebiris* (*e* for *i*).

In the first and second persons plural by these rules

Monēmus *gives* monēmur;	monētis *gives* monēminī, etc.
Regimus *gives* regimur;	regitis *gives* regimini, etc.
Audīmus *gives* audīmur;	audītis *gives* audīminī, etc.

and similarly you form the other two tenses.

The Gerund and Gerundive.

The Gerundive is an adjective got by changing the *m* of the Gerund into *s*. Thus *amandum, amandus*. It is declined like an adjective of the first class (*-us, -a, -um*), and means "necessary-to-be-loved, advised," etc.

If we wish to translate a sentence like the following into Latin we must use the nominative of the Gerund :—

We must pay regard to peace.
Paci a nobis serviundum est.[1]
(There is a paying regard to peace by us.)

But if *servio* had been a transitive verb (taking the Accusative case) we must have used the *Gerundive*. Thus *servare* (to preserve) is a transitive verb, and therefore takes an Accusative case. The sentence "We must preserve peace" is in Latin therefore *Pax nobis servanda est* (not *Pacem nobis servandum est*), "Peace is necessary-to-be-preserved by us". With the Gerund and Gerundive in this sense, the agent is put in the dative, not in the ablative with *a* or *ab*—unless, as in the first sentence above, there is a dative with the verb already, when the ablative is used to prevent ambiguity.

Rule.—With an intransitive verb use the nominative of the Gerund to express necessity and the dative of the agent (the person on whom the necessity rests), or the ablative with *a* or *ab* if there would be confusion with another dative. With a transitive verb use the verbal adjective, *i.e.*, the Gerundive, in the Nominative case, in agreement with the noun.

Examples.

They must spare the enemy.
Hostibus ab eis parcendum est.
(There is a sparing of the enemy by them.)

Parcĕre, "to spare," is intransitive, taking a dative after it.

[1] Note *u* for *e* here. This is occasionally found.

The Romans must attack the city.
Urbs Romanis oppugnanda est.
(The city is necessary-to-be-attacked by the Romans.)

Oppugnare is a transitive verb taking the accusative.

Compare these remarks now with those in Lesson XVIII. on the Gerund.

Exercise 21.

1. Affairs in Sicily are being carried on badly both by land and by sea. 2. No opportunity of doing harm will be given to the enemy. 3. On the contrary, when an opportunity is given (Ablative Absolute), the enemy will be attacked (*lacesso*). 4. Affairs were being carried on well in Sicily. 5. Almost everything had been lost in Sicily, but Eryx was being bravely defended. 6. War must be waged in that spot by us. 7. Men must not injure their friends. 8. This business must be entrusted to the discretion of Hannibal. 9. We must leave Sicily within a few days. 10. The Romans must never yield to the enemy. 11. Eryx must be defended by the Carthaginians. 12. If affairs are going on badly in Sicily we shall depart from that island. 13. When we have been defeated we shall leave this place. 14. We shall resolve to make an end of this war. 15. If our fleet is conquered by the Roman consul we shall make peace (remember the tense of "is conquered").

Note.—No vocabulary is given in this exercise, nor in any succeeding one. The words are mainly taken from the preceding Latin passage, and many of the phrases are closely modelled on it.

Passage No. 2.

In this piece there are one or two rather difficult things:—

Sed ita, ut: translate "but (peace must be preserved, he thought) in such a way that".

Essent refectae: translate as if it were a Pluperfect Indicative. The Subjunctive will be explained in the Key.
Vicissent and *dedissent:* also translate as if Pluperfect Indicative.
Compositurum: supply *esse* after this word.
Nisi ille decederent: "unless he and his friends should depart" (*ille cum suis* takes a plural verb).
Periturum: supply *esse* after this word.
Quam rediret: "than (he would) return home."
Ut succumbente patria: this is the consecutive clause after *tanta fuit ferocia.*

Ille, etsi flagrabat bellandi cupiditate, tamen paci serviundum putavit, quod patriam exhaustam sumptibus, diutius calamitates belli ferre[1] non posse[2] intellegebat, sed *ita, ut* statim mente agitaret, si paulum modo res *essent refectae,* bellum renovare Romanosque armis *persequi,*[3] donicum aut virtute *vicissent* aut victi manus *dedissent.* hoc consilio pacem conciliavit, in quo tanta fuit ferocia, cum Catulus negaret bellum compositurum, nisi ille cum suis, qui Erycem tenuerant, armis relictis Sicilia *decederent,* ut succumbente patria ipse periturum se potius dixerit, quam cum tanto flagitio domum rediret: non enim suae esse virtutis arma a patria accepta adversus hostes adversariis tradere. huius pertinaciae cessit Catulus.

[1] *Ferre:* Present Infinitive = to bear, to endure. An irregular verb: see Lesson XXVIII.

[2] *Posse:* Present Infinitive = to be able. An irregular verb: see Lesson XXVI.

[3] *Persequi* is the first instance of what we call a deponent verb. Such verbs are found in all four conjugations, and have the Passive forms but the Active meanings. Thus *persequor* means not "I am being pursued," but "I am pursuing"; similarly the Infinitive means "to pursue," not "to be pursued". The Passive Participle of *amo* (*amatus*) means "having been loved," but *persecutus* means "having pursued". This gives us a number of very useful Past Participles of Active meaning, the want of which in other verbs Latin often feels very seriously.

LESSON XXII.

EGO, TU.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.—GENITIVE AFTER SUPERLATIVES.

Latin has pronouns to translate our English *I* and *you*, but remember as nominatives they are only employed when very emphatic. *Ego*, I, is declined thus:—

	Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	*Ego*	I	*Nōs*	we
Acc.	*Mē*	me	*Nōs*	us
Gen.	*Meī*	of me	*Nostrī* (or *nostrum*)	of us
Dat.	*Mihĭ*	to me	*Nōbīs*	to us
Abl.	*Mē*	from me	*Nōbīs*	from us

The Pronoun *Tu*, thou *or* you, is declined thus:—

	Singular.		Plural.	
N. & V.	*Tū*	thou (you)	*Vōs*	you
Acc.	*Tē*	thee (you)	*Vōs*	you
Gen.	*Tuī*	of thee (you)	*Vestrī* (or *vestrum*)	of you
Dat.	*Tibĭ*	to thee (you)	*Vōbīs*	to you
Abl.	*Tē*	from thee (you)	*Vōbīs*	from you

Note there is the same form for the masculine and feminine. Be careful to notice when the English "you" is singular and when plural, and to use the singular or plural form accordingly in Latin.

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

In English we can talk of one thing being *hard*, of another being *harder*, and of a third being *hardest* of all. These three forms express different degrees, as they are called, of the quality named by the adjective. The first is called the Positive Degree, the second the Comparative Degree, the third the Superlative Degree. In English the two latter are usually formed by adding *-er* and *-est*

to the Positive form. In Latin we add *-ior* and *-issimus* to the stem of the adjective (got by dropping the genitive termination). Thus Positive *durus*, Genitive *duri*, hard, gives Comparative *durior*, harder, Superlative *durissimus*, hardest. Similarly Positive *ingens*, Genitive *ingentis*, Comparative *ingentior*, Superlative *ingentissimus*.

Adjectives like *asper* and *niger*, however, in the superlative double the *r* and add *-imus*. Thus—

Positive.	Genitive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Asper	asperi	asperior	asperrimus
Niger	nigri	nigrior	nigerrimus

Adjectives of the Third Declension like *acer*, *acris*, *acre*, also come under this rule. Thus—

Acer	acris	acrior	acerrimus

You notice in these, from the presence of *e*, that the superlative is not formed from the genitive, but from the nominative.

Facilis, *-e*, easy	*Humilis*, *-e*, low	*Difficilis*, *-e*, difficult
Gracilis, *-e*, slender	*Similis*, *-e*, like	*Dissimilis*, *-e*, unlike

These adjectives form the superlative in a similar manner by doubling the *l* and adding *-imus:*

Facilis, facilior, facillimus.

The Superlative forms are declined like adjectives of the First Class, *asperrimus*, *-a*, *-um*, etc.

The Comparatives are declined thus :—

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Durior	durius	Duriōrēs	duriōra
Acc.	Duriorem	durius	Duriōrēs	duriōra
Gen.	Duriōris		Duriōrum	
Dat.	Duriōri		Duriōribus	
Abl.	Duriōre		Duriōribus	

Sometimes the comparative, instead of expressing a

higher degree, expresses too high a degree of the quality named by the adjective. Thus :—

Hoc est durius. This is too hard.

Similarly the superlative may express a very high degree :—

Hoc est durissimum. This is very hard.

When two things are compared, after the comparative you may use *quam* (than) and put the two things in the same case, or omit the *quam*, when the second thing is put in the ablative case :—

Illud est durius quam hoc (nom. sing. neut.). That is harder than this.

Illud est hoc (abl. sing. neut.) *durius.* That is harder than this.

The superlative usually has a genitive after it :—

Hoc est omnium durissimum. This is the hardest of all things.

Exercise 22.

1. I was ablaze with greed for war : you thought we must pay regard to peace. 2. He gave these gifts to us, to you those. 3. You are the wisest of us all, I am bravest. 4. Having been subdued they surrendered to us. 5. My fatherland is very dear to me, although worn out by the disasters of war. 6. He (that man) is wiser than you. 7. He is sending these gifts to the wisest man of the Romans. 8. I was ablaze with keener passion for war than you. 9. This task is the easiest of all, that the most difficult. 10. He is very like his father (genitive) ; his brother is more like his mother (genitive). 11. I will rather perish[1] amid the ruins of my country. 12. He said he would go home in (with) the deepest disgrace. 13. If affairs have been a little restored, I shall renew the war against the Romans. 14. Thereafter we had made peace

[1] *Pereo, -ĭi, -ĭtum, -ire,* has future *perībo.* See *Eo,* Lesson XXVII.

with this design. 15. He and his men laid down their arms and left Sicily (*Latin says*, arms having been laid down left).

Passage No. 3.

At ille, ut Karthaginem venit, multo aliter, ac[1] sperarat,[2] *rem publicam se habentem*[3] cognovit. namque diuturnitate externi mali tantum exarsit intestinum bellum, *ut* numquam in pari periculo *fuerit* Karthago, nisi cum deleta est. primo mercenarii milites, quibus adversus Romanos usi erant,[4] desciverunt: quorum numerus erat *viginti milium.*[5] hi totam abalienarunt[6] Africam, ipsam Karthaginem oppugnarunt.[6] *quibus* malis adeo sunt Poeni perterriti, ut etiam auxilia ab Romanis petierint eaque impetrarint.[7] sed extremo, cum prope iam ad desperationem pervenissent, Hamilcarem imperatorem fecerunt. is non solum hostes a muris Karthaginis removit, cum *amplius* centum milia facta essent armatorum, sed etiam *eo* compulit, *ut* locorum angustiis clausi plures fame quam ferro interirent.

[1] *Aliter, ac:* "otherwise than". Latin says, "otherwise and".

[2] *Sperarat* for *speraverat.*

[3] *Res publica aliter se habet:* "the republic is in a different condition"; literally, "the republic is holding itself otherwise".

[4] *Quibus usi erant: utor, usus, uti,* a deponent, takes the Ablative Case after it. It means "to use".

[5] *Viginti milium: mille* is an adjective or noun, indeclinable, meaning "thousand"; but in the plural *milia* is a noun meaning "thousands," and is declined: Nom. *milia*, Acc. *milia*, Gen. *milium*, Dat. and Abl. *milibus.* Thus: *mille equites*, adj., a thousand horsemen; *mille equitum*, noun, a thousand (of) horsemen; *tria milia equitum*, three thousands of horsemen.

[6] *Abalienarunt, oppugnarunt: -arunt* for *-averunt.*

[7] *Impetrarint* for *impetraverint.*

LESSON XXIII.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE.—UT SUBSTANTIVAL.

These two tenses are formed from the Active by the same changes as were explained in Lesson XXI. Thus:—

Amem	gives	*amer*	*Amēs*	gives	*amēris*
Moneam	,,	*monear*	*Moneās*	,,	*moneāris*
Regam	,,	*regar*	*Regās*	,,	*regāris*
Audiam	,,	*audiar*	*Audiās*	,,	*audiāris*
Amēmus	gives	*amēmur*	*Amētis*	gives	*amēminī*
Moneāmus	,,	*moneāmur*	*Moneātis*	,,	*moneāminī*
Regāmus	,,	*regāmur*	*Regātis*	,,	*regāminī*
Audiāmus	,,	*audiāmur*	*Audiātis*	,,	*audiāminī*

and similarly with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

UT SUBSTANTIVAL.

He advised him to do this.
He ordered his soldiers to do this.

If you were asked to translate these sentences into Latin, you would probably proceed to write down the Perfect of the verb "to advise," the accusative of *is*, the Present Infinitive of the verb "to do," and so on: but the Present Infinitive is never found in Latin in the above connection. The sentences would stand thus:—

Monuit eum ut hoc faceret. He advised him that he should do this.

Militibus imperavit ut hoc facerent. He ordered the soldiers that they should do this.

Ut in these sentences does not mean "in order that," nor yet does it mean "in such a way that". It introduces neither a clause of consequence nor a clause of purpose. This is a new use altogether. In fact in each case *ut* introduces a clause exactly equivalent to a

noun or pronoun after the verb. Thus in the second clause "to do this" is equivalent to "this" in "He commanded *this* to the soldiers". This *Noun clause*, as we may call it, introduced by *ut* and having its verb in the Subjunctive, is always used in Latin after verbs of *commanding* or *entreating* and the like. Such a clause is called a Substantival clause (substantive equals noun), and this use of *ut* is called the Substantival use.

The *Rule* is: Verbs of entreating, commanding, decreeing, advising, striving, effecting, take a clause introduced by *ut* and followed by the Subjunctive in Latin. If there is a *not* or any other negative in the clause, instead of *ut* use *ne*.

Examples.

I ask you to do this.	*A te peto ut hoc facias.*
I ask you not to do this.	*A te peto ne hoc facias.*
The senate decreed that he should do this.	*Senatus decrevit ut is hoc faceret.*
He made it his aim to defeat the enemy.	*Id egit ut hostes superaret.*
He effected that he should be sent into Spain as general (he brought it to pass that he was sent).	*Effecit ut imperator in Hispaniam mitteretur.*

Here one example of each verb has been given. The principal parts of these verbs are given below:—

Peto, petīvi or *petii, petītum, petĕre*, to ask, to entreat.
Decerno, decrēvi, decrētum, decernĕre, to decree.
Ago, ēgi, actum, agĕre, to do (*id ago*, I make it my aim).
Efficio, effēci, effectum, efficĕre, to effect.

Exercise 23.

1. He was entreating them to do those things. 2. I have entreated them to do these things. 3. They made it their aim to send an army into Spain. 4. We shall

bring it to pass that we are sent into Spain as generals. 5. We have found our country in a much different condition from what we expected. 6. He gathered together mercenary soldiers that he might use them against the Romans. 7. We have attacked Carthage itself that all Africa may be alienated. 8. He will drive them to such a point that more will be perishing by famine than by the steel. 9. The senate decreed that Carthage should be attacked and destroyed. 10. The senate decrees that Carthage is to be attacked and destroyed. 11. The senate will decree the destruction of Carthage (*say* that Carthage may be, etc.). 12. He attacked Carthage in order that he might destroy it. 13. He entreated him not to send him to Rome. 14. He ordered the soldiers to remove the enemy from the walls. 15. He has ordered the soldiers to leave Italy at once.

(Tell in each sentence whether you are using a Final, Consecutive or Substantival Subjunctive.)

Note.—"That not" in a Consecutive clause is *ut non;* in the other two, *ne.* Similarly "that never" is *ut nunquam,* "that none" *ut nullus,* but in the Final and Substantival clauses *ne unquam, ne quis.*

Passage No. 4.

Omnia oppida abalienata, in his Uticam atque Hipponem, valentissima totius Africae, restituit *patriae.* neque eo fuit contentus, sed etiam fines *imperii* propagavit, *tota Africa* tantum otium reddidit, *ut* nullum in ea bellum *videretur multis annis* fuisse.

Rebus his *ex sententia* peractis *fidenti animo* atque infesto Romanis, quo facilius[1] causam bellandi reperiret,

[1] *Quo facilius.* When there is a comparative adjective or adverb in the Final clause, instead of *ut* Latin uses *quo.* Thus—

"By which he might find more easily."

"That he might find more easily."

effecit, ut imperator cum exercitu in Hispaniam mitteretur, eoque secum duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem.[1] Erat praeterea cum eo adulescens illustris, formosus, Hasdrubal; de hoc ideo mentionem fecimus, quod Hamilcare occiso ille exercitui praefuit resque magnas gessit, et *princeps* largitione vetustos pervertit mores Karthaginiensium, eiusdemque post mortem Hannibal ab exercitu accepit imperium.

LESSON XXIV.

Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive.—Dative Verbs.

These two tenses are combinations of the Perfect Participle Passive and the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive respectively of the verb "to be." Thus—

Perfect Subjunctive.	Pluperfect Subjunctive.
Amatus sim	*Amatus essem*
Monitus sim	*Monitus essem*
etc.	etc.

Dative Verbs.

A verb is transitive only when it takes an Accusative case after it. Every verb which in English takes an Objective case is not necessarily transitive in Latin. Thus—

I *spare* the enemy.
I *benefit* the city.
I *command* the army.
I *order* the soldiers.

All these verbs are in English transitive. In each case in Latin they take a dative and are intransitive :—

[1] *Annorum novem.* This is a descriptive genitive, "his son nine years old".

Parco hostibus. I-am-sparing-to the enemy.
Prosum urbi. I-am-of-advantage-to the city.
Praesum exercitui. I-am-at-the-head-for the army.
Impero militibus. I-give-orders-to the soldiers.

The main verbs in Latin taking a dative are comprised in the following lists :—

Confīdo, -ĕre...to trust. See *Fido.*
Faveo, -ēre...to favour. See *Prosum.*
Fīdo, -ĕre...to trust. *Tibi fido:* I trust you.
Impero, -are...to command. *Eis imperat ut hoc faciant:* he orders them to do this.
Invideo, -ēre...to envy. *Eis invideo:* I envy them.
Mĭnor, -ari...to threaten. *Pueris minatur:* he threatens the boys.
Obedio, -ire...to obey. See *Pareo.*
Obsto, -are...to resist. See *Resisto.*
Pareo, -ēre...to obey. *Parentibus pareo:* I obey my parents.
Persuadeo, -ēre...to persuade. *Eis persuadeo ut hoc faciant:* I persuade them to do this.
Prosum, prodesse...to profit. *Prosum tibi:* I do you good.
Resisto, -ĕre...to resist. *Hostibus resistamus:* let us resist the enemy.
Servio, -ire...to serve. *Regi servimus:* we serve a king.
Suadeo, -ēre...to advise. See *Persuadeo.*
Subvenio, -ire...to help. *Eis subvenio:* I help them.

Some of these verbs occasionally take an accusative and dative :—

Haec militibus imperat.
He gives these commands to the soldiers.
Mortem eis minatur.
He threatens death to them ("them with death" in English).
Haec tibi invideo.
I envy these things to you (I envy you these things).

There are of course many other verbs taking a dative. These are the more important. We have had already *cedo,* I yield to; and do not forget that the compounds of *sum,* save *possum,* take a dative.

Exercise 24.

1. Catulus commanded the Carthaginians to leave

Sicily. 2. He came-to-the-aid of the estranged towns (*subvenio*). 3. I was envying Hannibal his supreme command over the army. 4. The chief by his bounty did much good to the Carthaginians (*say* benefited many things: *multa* and dative). 5. Let us restore to our country the strongest towns of all Africa. 6. We shall never be slaves to Hannibal and the Carthaginians. 7. He said he would never be a slave to the Romans (*say* he denied he would ever). 8. He has restored such peace to Africa that there seems to have been no war within many years. 9. He was sent with an army to Spain that he might find more easily a pretext for war. 10. You are taking with you your son nine years of age. 11. He mentioned this man because he accomplished many great deeds. 12. Let us oppose our foes by land and by sea. 13. Hannibal threatens the Romans with perpetual war (*say* threatens perpetual war to the Romans). 14. He came to Spain with an army that he might the better accomplish these things. 15. When he had accomplished these things in accordance with his wish he set out for home.

Passage No. 5.

(With this passage we finish the Life of Hamilcar. There is only one thing to note in it before attempting the translation; the verb *mallet*, the last word, is the Imperfect Subjunctive of an irregular verb, *malle*, to prefer. It will be explained more fully in Lesson XXIX.)

At Hamilcar, *posteaquam* mare *transiit* in Hispaniamque *venit*, magnas res *secunda* gessit *fortuna*: maximas bellicosissimasque gentes subegit, equis, armis, viris, pecunia *totam* locupletavit *Africam*. *hic* cum in Italiam bellum *inferre* meditaretur, *nono anno* postquam in Hispaniam venerat, in proelio pugnans adversus Vettones occisus est.

huius perpetuum odium erga Romanos maxime concitasse[1] videtur secundum bellum Poenicum. namque Hannibal, filius eius, *assiduis* patris *obtestationibus* eo est perductus, ut *interire* quam Romanos non experiri mallet.

LESSON XXV.

Imperative, Infinitives, Participles Passive.—Conditional Sentences.

Turn to the Table now and learn the Imperative in each conjugation. The second person singular Present Imperative Active is always got by dropping *-re* of the Present Infinitive: *amare, ama; monere, mone*, etc. The third person plural is always got by adding *o* to the same person of the Present Indicative: *amant, amantō; monent, monentō*, etc.

The second person singular Present Imperative Passive is always the same as the Present Infinitive Active. Then change *-te* of the Imperative Active into *-minī* and add *r* to the remaining tenses, neglecting the forms ending in *-tote: amāte, amāminī; amātō, amātor*, etc.

For the Present Infinitive Passive change *-e* of the Present Infinitive Active into *-ī*; but in the Third Conjugation change *-ere* into *-i*, thus: *regere, regi*.

The Future Infinitive Passive is formed from the Supine and the Present Infinitive Passive of *eo, iri*, to go: *amatum īrī*, "to be being gone for the purpose of loving," that is, "to be about to be loved."

Note that in such a sentence as *Dixit eum amatum iri* (he said that man was going to be loved) *amatum* governs *eum*, and does not agree with it.

[1] Contracted for *concitavisse*.

Conditional Clauses.

"If he had done this he would have paid the penalty."

This is what is called a conditional sentence, a sentence with a condition expressed in it, contained in the "if" clause. On looking at it you will see that it refers to the past, and that it is implied that the condition was not fulfilled; that is, he did not do it, and was not punished. Such a sentence in Latin contains two Pluperfect Subjunctives :—

Si hoc fecisset poenas dedisset.

Now consider this sentence :—

"If he were to do (*or* did) this he would be punished."

This sentence obviously refers to the Future. If he were to act in a certain way in the future, he would pay the penalty in the future. Such a conditional sentence has two Present Subjunctives in Latin :—

Si hoc faciat poenas det.

Never mind the fact that "would be" suggests an Imperfect Subjunctive. It refers to the future and must be Present tense in Latin.

Distinguish this carefully from a conditional sentence like that given in Lesson VI.

Si hoc fecerit poenas dabit.

If he does (shall have done) this he will pay the penalty.

Exercise 25.

1. If his affairs had been restored he would have renewed the war (see Passage No. 2). 2. If he had conquered them by his valour they would have surrendered (see Passage No. 2). 3. If Catulus had said he would not end the war, the Romans would have left Sicily. 4. If

his affairs were to be restored, he would renew the war. 5. If he conquers them by his valour they will surrender. 6. If he should conquer them by his valour they would surrender. 7. If Catulus were to refuse to end the war they would leave Sicily. 8. If Catulus refuses to end the war they will leave Sicily. 9. The second Punic war seems chiefly to have been stirred up by the undying enmity of this man for the Romans. 10. Carry out great exploits, subdue the most warlike races, and enrich Africa with men and money. 11. He said Africa would be enriched with steeds and men. 12. He said he was meditating on carrying the war into Italy. 13. He says Africa is being enriched with men and money. 14. They were slain in the ninth year after they came into Spain. 15. Ye shall love your enemies.

Passage No. 6.[1]

Life of Hannibal.

Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Karthaginiensis. si verum est, quod nemo dubitat,[2] ut populus Romanus omnes gentes virtute superarit,[3] non est infitiandum[4] Hannibalem *tanto*[5] praestitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia, *quanto*[5] populus Romanus *antecedat* fortitudine cunctas

[1] The preceding passages embrace the Life of Hamilcar. The remaining passages contain the Life of his more famous son, Hannibal. Don't be confused because the first sentence contains no verb: it is a sort of heading to the Life—"Hannibal, the son of Hamilcar, a Carthaginian".

[2] *Quod nemo dubitat: quod* is the relative—"If it is true, *which* no one doubts".

[3] *Ut...superarit:* this is a substantival clause subject to *verum est*—"If *it* is true that the Roman people has surpassed". *Superarit* is contracted for *superaverit.*

[4] *Infitiandum* is Gerund of *infitiari*, a deponent verb, "to deny".

[5] *Tanto*, "by so much"; *quanto*, "by how much".

nationes. nam quotienscumque cum eo congressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior. quod nisi[1] domi civium suorum invidia debilitatus esset, Romanos videtur superare potuisse.[2] Sed multorum obtrectatio devicit unius virtutem.

Hic autem velut hereditate[3] relictum odium paternum erga Romanos *sic* conservavit, *ut* prius animam quam id *deposuerit*, qui quidem, cum patria pulsus esset et *alienarum opum* indigeret, nunquam destiterit[4] animo bellare cum Romanis. nam ut omittam Philippum,[5] quem absens hostem reddidit Romanis, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rex Antiochus fuit.

LESSON XXVI.

Possum and Conditional Sentences.

There are seven common irregular verbs in Latin:—

Possum, I am able	*Volŏ*, I am willing
Eō, I go	*Nōlō*, I am unwilling
Ferō, I carry	*Mālō*, I prefer

Fiō, I become, I am made: Passive of *facio*

[1] *Quod nisi:* literally, "as to which unless". We should just say, "but unless".

[2] *Videtur superare potuisse:* literally, "*he* seems to have been able to conquer". We would say, "*it* seems *he* would have been able to conquer". Latin uses *videtur* personally, English impersonally, that is, without a person as subject. *Potuisse* is the Perfect Infinitive of an irregular verb = to have been able. See Lesson XXVI.

[3] *Velut hereditate:* "left as if by a legacy."

[4] *Qui nunquam destiterit:* the relative here takes the Subjunctive instead of the Indicative because it means "since he" (who since).

[5] *Ut omittam Philippum:* "that I may pass over Philip". We should say, "to pass over Philip," "omitting Philip".

They are irregular only in the tenses derived from the Present trunk, that is in the Present, Imperfect and Future.

Turn now to the table and learn the conjugation of *possum*, I am able. It will help you to remember that *possum* is *pot-* + *sum*, the *t* being changed to *s* before the parts of *sum* that begin with *s*, and the *f* in the Perfect tenses being dropped. Thus Po*s*-sum, Po*t*-es, and Po*t*-ui (not pot*f*ui).

Note this verb has only a Present and Perfect Infinitive, and has no Participles, Gerund or Supines.

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.—*Continued.*

"If he were now doing this he would now be paying the penalty."

This sentence refers to the Present, and it is implied that he is not now doing this, and is not now paying the penalty. This is expressed in Latin by two Imperfect Subjunctives :—

Si hoc faceret, poenas daret.

You remember if the Condition referred to the past and its non-fulfilment was implied we said two Pluperfect Subjunctives were used. These, however, may be either or both Imperfect Subjunctives if you do not wish to talk of a completed, but of a continuous action or state. Thus "If he had been doing this he would have paid the penalty" would be *Si hoc faceret poenas dedisset.* Similarly "If he had done this he would have been paying the penalty" would be *Si hoc fecisset poenas daret.* And again *Si hoc faceret poenas daret* may mean, as above, "If he were doing this he would be paying the penalty" (present time) or "If he had been doing this he would have been paying the penalty". Only the context or the insertion of an adverb such as *nunc* or *tum* can tell you which is really meant.

Exercise 26.

1. We shall be able to conquer the Romans. 2. They were able to conquer all nations. 3. Ye were able to surpass all nations in valour. 4. Thou canst not kill thine enemy. 5. We had been able to-utterly-subdue the valour of one man. 6. You will have been able to lay down your hatred for the Romans. 7. He says he can kill his enemies. 8. He says he can surpass all races in valour. 9. He says Hannibal could have surpassed all generals in forethought. 10. If Hannibal were here now he would be conquering Italy. 11. If Hannibal had been in that battle he would have defeated the enemy. 12. If Hannibal had not surpassed all generals in skill, he would not have been the greatest general of all (if not = *nisi*). 13. If we had been doing this we would have suffered the severest punishment (paid the heaviest (*gravissimus*) penalty). 14. If you had done this, you would have been suffering the most severe (*gravissimus*) penalties. 15. If he had been wise he would not have been doing that.

The next is rather a difficult passage, but try to puzzle out the involved sentence in the first half. This you should manage with the notes below; and it will be excellent practice. If, however, you find it impossible to translate it, consult the Key, but do not leave the passage till you thoroughly understand its structure.

Passage No. 7.

Hunc tanta cupiditate incendit bellandi, ut usque a rubro mari arma conatus sit inferre Italiae.[1] ad quem cum legati venissent Romani, qui de eius voluntate ex-

[1] *Arma inferre Italiae*, "to carry arms against Italy" (dative).

plorarent darentque[1] operam consiliis clandestinis, ut Hannibalem in *suspicionem* regi adducerent,[2] *tamquam* ab ipsis corruptum alia atque antea sentire, neque id frustra fecissent,[3] idque Hannibal comperisset seque ab interioribus consiliis segregari vidisset, tempore dato adiit ad regem, eique cum multa[4] de fide sua et odio in Romanos commemorasset, hoc adiunxit: "pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, *puerulo me*, utpote non amplius novem annos nato,[5] in Hispaniam imperator proficiscens Karthagine, Iovi optimo maximo hostias immolavit. quae divina res dum conficiebatur, quaesivit a me vellemne[6] secum in castra proficisci. id cum libenter accepissem atque ab eo petere coepissem ne dubitaret ducere, tum ille, 'faciam,' inquit,[7] 'si mihi fidem, quam postulo[8] dederis'."

[1] *Qui . . . explorarent darentque: qui*, here, is the relative and means *ut ii*, "in order that they". This is *qui* Final, introducing a clause of purpose. See Lesson XXXIII.

[2] *Adducere Hannibalem in suspicionem regi*, "to bring Hannibal into suspicion to (with) the king," a Final clause. Translate this sentence before translating line 6: *Dicimus corruptum ab eis Hannibalem alia sentire.* "We say that having been bribed by them, Hannibal is changing his views (thinking other things)"—*alia atque antea*, "other than before". *Cf.* Passage No. 3, beginning. The meaning is, "that they might make the king suspect that Hannibal, having been bribed, was changing his views".

[3] *Neque . . . fecissent:* Here the *cum* clauses are resumed—"When they had not done that in vain, and Hannibal discovered and saw".

[4] *Multa* is acc. neut. plur. after *commemorasset* = *commemoravisset.*

[5] *Utpote . . . nato*, "as being born," etc.

[6] *Vellemne*, "whether I was willing". *Vellem* is the first person singular Imperfect Subjunctive of *volo*, to be willing (see Table of Irregular Verbs).

[7] *Inquit* is a defective verb—only used in certain parts—meaning "says he," "said he," and used to introduce the speaker's exact words.

[8] *Fidem quam postulo*, "the pledge which I ask".

LESSON XXVII.

Eō.—Conditional Sentences.—Quin and Quominus.

Eō	*īvi*	*ĭtum*	*īre*	.	. to go

Turn to the Table and learn this verb off by heart. Note again that only the Present stem tenses are irregular. It is a very useful verb, since it forms many compounds. These always form the Perfect in *-ii*, not *-ivi* :—

Redĕō	*redĭī*	*redĭtum*	*redīre*	.	. to return
Inĕō	*inĭī*	*inĭtum*	*inīre*	.	. to enter
Abĕō	*abĭī*	*abĭtum*	*abīre*	.	. to go away
Adĕō	*adĭī*	*adĭtum*	*adīre*	.	. to approach

Ineo and *adeo*, which are transitive, have a complete Passive. All other compounds of *eo* which are transitive have a complete Passive. This is formed, according to the usual rules, from the Active.

Conditional Sentences.—*Continued.*

There is a large class of conditional sentences in which nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition. (*a*) "If he is doing this he is a fool." In this sentence we neither imply that he is doing it, nor yet that he is not doing it. We simply say, "if he is, he is a fool". Similarly in sentences like (*b*) "If he said this he was a fool," (*c*) "If he was saying this he was a fool". These in Latin, as in English, have the Indicative Mood.

(*a*) Si hoc facit, stultus est.
(*b*) Si hoc dixit, stultus erat.
(*c*) Si hoc dicebat, stultus erat.

Quin and Quominus.

Eum inhibuit quominus rediret. He prevented him from returning.

Vix inhiberi potuit quin rediret. Scarce was he able to be prevented from returning (but that he should return).

Non dubium est quin hac mente semper futurus sim. There is no doubt but that I shall always be of this mind.

Nemo est quin hoc putet. There is no one but thinks this.

Non dubitavit quin hoc ita esset. He did not doubt but that this was so.

Non fieri potest quin hoc ita sit. It is impossible but that this is so (that this is not so).

The Rule may be put thus: *Quominus* with the Subjunctive after a verb of hindering is translated by "from" and the Participle in English. *Quin* again is found only after negative verbs and phrases, verbs and phrases with a "not" expressed or implied, and is usually translated by "but" or "who...not".

Exercise 27.

1. There is no doubt but that he is returning. 2. There was no doubt but he was returning. 3. It is impossible that he is not departing. 4. It was impossible that you were not departing. 5. There was no one but thought the enemy were departing. 6. There is no one but is now entering the city. 7. If he was approaching Rome he was making a mistake. 8. If he is entering the house he is a fool. 9. I shall go to Rome if he will go to Carthage. 10. If he is doing this there is no good in it (*say* nothing of good, *nil boni*). 11. They inflamed that man with such a desire for war that he tried to invade Italy. 12. They said that Hannibal was changing his opinions (thinking other things than before). 13. When I was a little boy (Ablative Absolute), Hannibal set out for Spain from Carthage. 14. I persuaded him not to hesitate to take me with him. 15. I will do so if you give me the pledge which I demand.

Passage No. 8.

"Simul me ad aram adduxit, apud quam sacrificare instituerat, eamque ceteris remotis[1] tenentem iurare[2] iussit, numquam me in amicitia cum Romanis fore.[3] Id ego iusiurandum patri datum usque ad[4] hanc aetatem ita conservavi, ut[5] nemini dubium esse debeat, quin reliquo tempore eadem mente sim futurus.[6] quare si quid amice de Romanis cogitabis, non imprudenter feceris, si me celaris:[7] cum quidem bellum parabis, te ipsum frustraberis, si non me in eo principem posueris."

Hac igitur qua diximus aetate[8] cum patre in Hispaniam profectus est: cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperatore suffecto, equitatui omni praefuit. hoc quoque interfecto exercitus summam imperii[9] ad eum detulit. id Karthaginem delatum publice[10] comprobatum est. sic Hannibal minor quinque et viginti annis natus[11] imperator factus

[1] *Ceteris remotis* is an Ablative Absolute.

[2] *Tenentem jurare:* the subject of *tenentem* is *me*, remember, and the construction is accusative and Infinitive. Verbs like *jurare*, to swear, *sperare*, to hope, *minari*, to threaten, take accusative and *Future* Infinitive in Latin: *Juro me in amicitia fore*, I swear I will be in the friendship *or* I swear to be in the friendship.

[3] *Fore* is another form for *futurum esse*, Future Infinitive of *sum*.

[4] *Usque ad*, "straight on up to".

[5] *Ita . . . ut:* note the Consecutive clause.

[6] *Eadem mente esse*, "to be of the same mind".

[7] *Celaris* is a contraction for *celaveris*. Note the Future Perfects *feceris*, *celaris*, *posueris*.

[8] *Hac qua diximus aetate: Hac* goes with *aetate*, "at this age *at* which we have said (he went, etc.)". *Hac quam diximus aetate* would mean "at this age which we have mentioned".

[9] *Summam imperii*, "the total of the power," "the chief control".

[10] *Publice:* not "publicly," but "in the name of the State".

[11] *Minor quinque et viginti annis natus:* this is a very peculiar Latin idiom meaning "less than five and twenty years of age," literally, "born less than five and twenty years".

proximo triennio[1] omnes gentes Hispaniae bello subegit: Saguntum, foederatam[2] civitatem, vi expugnavit,[3] tres exercitus maximos comparavit.

LESSON XXVIII.

FERO.—QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT.

Now turn again to the Table and learn the Irregular verb *Fero*, I carry, I bring. I hope you are bearing in mind that these verbs are irregular only in the Present stem tenses. In fact, *fero* is not irregular in the Imperfect and Future Indicative, nor in the Present Subjunctive. Its Passive, too, is formed from the Active according to the usual rules. This again is a very useful verb, forming many compounds :—

in + fero gives *in-fĕro*, *in-tŭli*, *il-lātum*, *in-ferre*, to carry into.
Note before *l*, *n* becomes *l*.
ad + fero gives *af-fĕro*, *at-tŭli*, *al-lātum*, *af-ferre*, to carry to.
Note the *d* changing to *f*, to *t*, to *l*.
ex + fero gives *ef-fĕro*, *ex-tŭli*, *e-lātum*, *ef-ferre*, to carry out.
Note the changes the preposition undergoes.

These are some of the common compounds, but you must notice the others as they occur. Try always to understand the force of the preposition with which the verb is compounded.

QUESTIONS.

In English we mark a question by the tone of the voice, by altering the order of the words, or by introducing the

[1] *Proximo triennio*, "within the next three years".

[2] *Foederatam* is an adjective, and implies that the State had a special treaty of alliance with Rome.

[3] *Vi expugnare* means "to storm" ("to capture by force").

sentence by some interrogative word. The first two methods are not used in Latin. To show that a sentence is a question in Latin we put a little word *-ne*, or *num*, at the beginning of the sentence—*num* at the beginning, *-ne* after the first emphatic word. If the question is negatived we employ *nonne* (or *num*, according to meaning).

Librumne tulisti? Have you brought the book?

Num librum tulisti? You haven't brought the book, have you? (expecting the answer "no").

Nonne librum tulisti? Have you not brought the book? (expecting the answer "yes").

All these are direct questions. But "He asked me whether I had brought the book" is an indirect question—that is, a reported question. The following are some further examples of this:—

He asked me if I had brought the book.
He asked me when I would bring the book.
He asked me what book I was bringing.

We call words like *if*, *when*, *what*, interrogative particles, and these sentences always have one of these at the beginning. "If" may be *num* or *-ne*, but *-ne* must be put directly after the first word of the sentence and joined to it. "When" in such a sentence is not *cum*, but *quando*. "What," of course, is *quem*. The interrogative pronoun, "who," "which," "what," is just the same as the relative given in Lesson XVI., but has *quis* and *quid* as well as *qui* and *quod* in the nominative singular masculine and neuter. *Qui* and *quod*, however, are used as adjectives with nouns; *quis* and *quid* alone, as pronouns. Well, these sentences must be introduced by an interrogative word, and must have their verb in the Subjunctive. The tense follows the usual rules of sequence:—

Present Subjunctive after Primary tenses } denoting con-
Imperfect Subjunctive after Secondary tenses } tinuous action.

Perfect Subjunctive after both } denoting com-
Pluperfect Subjunctive after Secondary tenses } pleted action.
Future Subjunctive. Future Participle + *sim* (or *essem*, in secondary sequence to denote an action occurring after the action of the main verb).

The above three sentences become :—

A me petivit num librum tulissem (or *librumne tulissem*).
A me petivit quando librum laturus essem.
A me petivit quem librum ferrem.

Compare these with the following :—

A me petit librumne feram. He asks me if I am bringing the book.

A me petit librumne tulerim. He asks me if I have brought the book.

A me petit num librum laturus sim. He asks me if I will bring the book.

Note.—Never use *si* for "if" in a clause like this.

Exercise 28.

1. They are asking him whether he will bring them their books. 2. They are asking him if he is bringing much money with him. 3. They are asking him if he has brought much money with him. 4. We asked them if they had brought any money with them (*say* anything of money, *quid pecuniae*). 5. We asked them if they were bringing any money with them. 6. We asked them if they would bring much money with them. 7. If you bring (*duco*) with you all the cavalry, you will win the day (you will conquer, simply). 8. He asked me if I would go with him to the camp. 9. Hamilcar asks Hannibal if he will go with him to the camp. 10. They bade the prisoners swear to remain friendly to the Romans (*say* that they would remain : Future Infinitive). 11. He has gone away to bring the cavalry. 12. We asked him when he would return to Rome. 13. I do not know what

books he is bringing with him from Italy. 14. The soldiers did not know whether that was being approved of in-the-name-of-the-State. 15. Within the next three years, the Carthaginians subdued all the nations of Spain.

Passage No. 9.

(This, again, is another easy passage; once you know the words it will translate quite readily.)

Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium[1] in Italiam secum duxit. saltum Pyrenaeum transiit. quacumque iter fecit, cum omnibus incolis conflixit: neminem nisi victum dimisit. ad Alpes posteaquam venit, quae Italiam ab Gallia seiungunt, quas nemo umquam cum exercitu ante eum praeter Herculem Graium transierat (quo facto[2] is hodie saltus Graius appellatur), Alpicos conantes prohibere transitu[3] concidit, loca patefecit, itinera muniit,[4] effecit ut ea[5] elephantus ornatus[6] ire posset, qua antea unus homo inermis vix poterat repere. hac copias traduxit in Italiamque pervenit.

Conflixerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornelio Scipione consule eumque pepulerat. cum hoc eodem Clastidii apud Padum decernit sauciumque inde ac fugatum dimittit. tertio idem Scipio cum collega Tiberio Longo apud Trebiam adversus eum venit. cum iis manum conseruit:

[1] *Unum . . . alterum . . . tertium*, "one . . . the other . . . the third".

[2] *Quo facto:* This is not an Ablative Absolute. It means "from that deed," "by reason of that (which) deed".

[3] *Prohibere transitu*, "to keep from the passage". *Transitu* is an Ablative of Separation.

[4] *Itinera muniit* is simply "made roads," not "fortified roads," although *munire* means strictly "to fortify".

[5] *Ea . . . qua*, "by that road by which"—both adverbs, formed from ablative of pronouns.

[6] *Elephantus ornatus*, "an elephant with its equipment".

utrosque profligavit. inde per Ligures[1] Apenninum[2] transiit, petens Etruriam[3] hoc itinere[4] adeo gravi morbo adficitur oculorum, ut postea numquam dextro[5] aeque bene usus sit.

LESSON XXIX.

VŎLŎ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ AND VERBS WITH INFINITIVE.

The three verbs *volo*, I am willing, *nolo*, I am not willing, *malo*, I prefer (I am more willing), are so much alike that they had better be learned together.

Nolo is simply *non* + *volo*, as you will see by a look at the present tense. Sometimes the *non* is kept entire, sometimes the *v* of *volo* is simply changed into *n*. Thus *nonvis*, *nonvult*; but *nolumus*, *nolunt*.

Similarly *malo* is simply *ma-* (for *magis*, more) and *volo*, "I am more willing," that is, "I prefer".

Note the three form the Imperfect Indicative alike by adding *-ebam*, etc.; the Future Indicative by adding *-am*, *-es*, *-et*, etc.; the Present Subjunctive by adding *-im*, *-is*, *-it*, etc., to the Present stem; and the Imperfect Subjunctive by adding *-m*, *-s*, *-t*, etc., to the Infinitive. They all lack the Passive voice.

[1] *Ligures:* These were a tribe in the north of Italy, dwelling round the Gulf of Genoa.

[2] *Apenninum:* The great central mountain range of Italy. We talk of the "Apennines," the Romans spoke of the "Apennine".

[3] *Etruriam:* the district of Italy north of Rome and the Tiber.

[4] Note the way in which the meaning of *iter* varies, now "a road," now "a march," now "a journey".

[5] *Numquam dextro*, "He never had the proper use of his right eye". This disease, in fact, is said to have made the right eye blind.

Verbs with the Infinitive in Latin.

Every verb which is followed by an Infinitive in English does not take an Infinitive in Latin. If you think of the usual form of a Latin Final or Consecutive or Substantival clause in English, or of the Supine construction after verbs of motion, you will at once see that this is so. In fact you must always be careful about putting an Infinitive after a Latin verb. The verbs which take this in Latin belong to three great classes :—

1. Verbs which denote Possibility or the Reverse.
2. Verbs which denote Beginning or Ceasing.
3. Verbs which denote Desire or Endeavour.

There are a good many more which do not come under these heads, but these are the commoner ones. The following list gives some of the Latin verbs :—

1. *Possum*, I am able, I can: *Non possumus haec facere*, we cannot do this.

2. *Coepi*, *incipio*, I begin: *Praeesse exercitui coeperat*, he began to be at the head of the army.

3. *Cupio*, I desire : *Cupio haec cognoscere*, I desire to know these things.

Volo, *nolo*, *malo*.

Conor, I attempt.

Statuo, I resolve : *Romanis bellum inferre statuit*, he resolved to attack the Romans.

Of the others the more common are—

Debeo, I ought: *Inimicis ignoscere debemus*, we ought to pardon our enemies.

Videor, I seem.

Scio, I know } *Scio* (*disco*) *hoc facere*, I know (I am learning) how
Disco, I learn } to do this.

Odi, I hate (only used in the Perfect Tenses, the Perfect having a present meaning ; similarly *Coepi*).

In translation, then, when you come across one of these verbs, you must always look for an Infinitive to complete the meaning.

Exercise 29.

1. They have begun at last to cross the defile of the Pyrenees. 2. He preferred to send one of these armies into Africa. 3. Hannibal has brought it to pass that an elephant with its equipment is able to go by that way. 4. He attempted to join battle with Publius Cornelius Scipio at the river Po. 5. They ought to leave one army in Spain and lead the other into Italy (the one ... the other, *alter . . . alter*). 6. They ought to have left one army in Spain and led the other into Italy (*say* "were owing to leave": Latin makes *debeo* Past, and the Infinitive Present tense). 7. We know how to lay open the country and make roads. 8. It seems that Hannibal crossed the Alps by the Graian defile (*say* Hannibal seems to have, etc.). 9. It is said that Hannibal routed (*profligo*) the inhabitants of the Alps (*Alpici*) in trying to prevent his passage (*say* Hannibal is said). 10. On this journey they were afflicted with so serious a disease that half the army (*say* "half of the army," using *dimidium*, half) perished (*intereo*).

(The following are five sentences on Indirect questions. Remember "whether . . . or not" is *utrum . . . necne.*)

11. They do not know whether Hannibal has made for Etruria or not. 12. I cannot tell whether Hannibal wishes this or not. 13. He asked if he was unwilling to go into Spain and would prefer to remain at Carthage. 14. We shall ask them when they prefer to do this. 15. You have told us what the enemy were wishing.

Passage No. 10.

(This passage is short and easy. There is nothing in it requiring explanation beforehand.)

Qua valetudine cum etiamtum premeretur lecticaque

ferretur, C. Flaminium consulem apud Trasumenum cum exercitu insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multo post C. Centenium praetorem cum delecta manu saltus occupantem. hinc in Apuliam pervenit. ibi obviam ei venerunt duo consules, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. utriusque exercitus uno proelio fugavit, Paulum consulem occidit et aliquot praeterea consulares, in iis Cn. Servilium Geminum, qui superiore anno fuerat consul.

Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est nullo resistente. in propinquis urbi montibus moratus est. cum aliquot ibi dies castra habuisset et Capuam reverteretur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictator Romanus, in agro Falerno ei se obiecit.

LESSON XXX.

Volo, Nolo, Malo.—Gerundive.

This lesson will not introduce any new irregular verbs; you may revise and make quite sure of *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*.

The Gerundive Construction.

In Lesson XVIII. you were taught how to translate a sentence like—

Vincemus hostibus parcendo.
We shall conquer by sparing the enemy.

But this is not always a possible construction if the Gerund has the Accusative after it. Thus we may say,

Hi causa pacem conciliandi venerunt.
These men have come for-the-sake-of-making peace (to make peace).

where we have used the Genitive of the Gerund followed by an Accusative. But we may also say,

Hi causa pacis conciliandae venerunt.
These men have come for-the-sake-of peace necessary-to-be-made.

In the second construction we have used the Gerundive in agreement with the noun, the whole phrase being in the *case* the Gerund would have been in. This Gerundive construction must always be used when the Gerund would be in the accusative or dative. In the ablative and genitive either Gerund or Gerundive may be used. *Hi ad pacem conciliandum venerunt* must never be used, but *Hi ad pacem conciliandam venerunt.* So *Decemviros legibus scribendis creaverunt :* They appointed Decemvirs for laws necessary-to-be-drawn-up, *that is,* for the drawing up of laws *or* to draw up laws ; not *leges scribendo* (dative of Gerund). But you may have either, *Colendo agros divites erimus* or *Colendis agris divites erimus :* We shall be rich by cultivating the fields ; and *Causa pacis conciliandae* or *Causa pacem conciliandi :* For the sake of making peace.

When the noun in the genitive is plural and is of the first or second declension, and would cause two consecutive syllables to end in *-orum* if used, the Gerundive is never employed. Thus *Causa Romanorum videndorum* would never be used for *Causa Romanos videndi :* For the sake of seeing the Romans.

Exercise 30.

1. He stayed in the mountains near the city for the purpose of holding his camp there. 2. He set out for Rome to fight this battle. 3. He wished to send forward Caius Centenius the praetor, for the purpose of seizing the defile. 4. He won great glory by routing the enemy in one battle. 5. We would have preferred to appoint decemvirs for the purpose of drawing up laws. 6. He has done this that Hannibal may be willing to end the war. 7. He wished to march quickly for the purpose of

surrounding the enemy. 8. Although he was weighed down by a serious disease he preferred to be carried in a litter. 9. He marched into Apulia to meet the consuls (use Supine, or *ad* and Gerund). 10. With none to oppose he advanced on Rome to storm the city. 11. Quintus Fabius Maximus wished to throw himself in his path. 12. They were unwilling to advance on Rome to attack the city. 13. He did this in order that the consul might be unwilling to leave the city. 14. He returned to Capua to attack the Romans. 15. He surrounded the consul and his army and slew them.

Passage No. 11.

(In this passage there are frequent examples of *Participle + Finite verb* in Latin, equal to *two Finite verbs* in English.)

Hic clausus locorum angustiis noctu sine ullo detrimento exercitus se expedivit Fabioque, callidissimo imperatori, dedit verba. namque obducta nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvencorum deligata incendit eiusque generis multitudinem magnam dispalatam immisit.[1] quo repentino obiecto visu tantum terrorem iniecit exercitui Romanorum, ut egredi extra vallum nemo sit ausus. hanc post rem gestam non ita multis diebus[2] M. Minucium Rufum, magistrum equitum pari ac dictatorem imperio,[3] dolo productum in proelium fugavit. Tiberium Sempronium Gracchum, iterum consulem, in Lucanis absens in insidias inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Marcellum,

[1] *Magnam dispalatam immisit:* let loose a great multitude, "having straggled," or, perhaps, "having been scattered," that is, "let loose far and wide".

[2] *Non ita multis diebus:* Ablative of time within which.

[3] *Pari ac dictatorem imperio,* "with power the same as the dictator."

quinquies consulem, apud Venusiam pari modo interfecit. longum est[1] omnia enumerare proelia. quare hoc unum satis erit dictum, ex quo intelligi possit,[2] quantus ille fuerit:[3] quamdiu in Italia fuit, nemo ei in acie restitit, nemo adversus eum post Cannensem pugnam in campo castra posuit.

LESSON XXXI.

FĪŌ.—VERBS OF FEARING.

The Passive of *facio*, I make, which, remember, is a verb of the Third Conjugation, would naturally be *facior*, but this is not found in Latin. The Passive is *fīō*, *factus sum*, *fĭĕrī*. This verb again is only difficult in the Present stem tenses. It means, I am made *or* I become. Turn now to the Table and learn it before proceeding.

VERBS OF FEARING.

There is a rather strange construction in Latin after verbs of fearing. We say:—

I fear that he may not come.
I fear that he may come.

Latin puts the statement in exactly the opposite way: where we have "that not" it has *ut;* where we have "that" it has *nē*. Thus:—

Vereor ut veniat.
Vereor nē veniat.

[1] *Longum est:* Latin says "it is long" where we say "it would be long".

[2] *Ex quo possit* = *ut ex eo possit*, "that it may be perceived": a *qui* Final clause. See Lesson XXXIII.

[3] *Quantus ille fuerit:* Indirect question.

These are Substantival *ut* clauses. If the verb of fearing is secondary in tense, you have the Imperfect Subjunctive :—

Verebar ne veniret. I was afraid that he would come.
Verebar ut veniret. I was afraid that he would not come.

But remember that "I fear to do wrong" is *vereor peccare;* "I am afraid to cross the river," *vereor flumen transire.*

Exercise 31.

Note that verbs like "to be," "to become," "to be named," "to be chosen," take the same case after as before them.

1. I fear that Caesar may not become king. 2. I was afraid that Caesar might not become king. 3. They were afraid that Caesar would cross the river. 4. They are afraid that Caesar may cross the river. 5. Caesar was afraid to become king. 6. Caesar is afraid to become king. 7. Caesar is afraid to cross the river. 8. Caesar was afraid of crossing the river. 9. By cultivating virtue we shall become happy. 10. Within not so many days these men will become consuls. 11. After this achievement I shall become a very clever general. 12. Caesar said that that man had been made consul by treachery. 13. Caesar says he has no fear of Cicero's becoming consul (*say* lest Cicero may become). 14. Men become good generals by practising military matters. 15. From this it is possible to see how great a general he became.

Passage No. 12.

Hinc invictus patriam defensum revocatus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipionem, filium eius Scipionis, quem ipse primo apud Rhodănum, iterum apud Padum, tertio apud Trebiam fugarat. cum hoc exhaustis iam patriae facul-

tatibus cupivit in praesentiarum[1] bellum componere, quo valentior[2] postea congrederetur. In colloquium convenit: condiciones non convenerunt.[3] post id factum paucis diebus apud Zamam cum eodem conflixit: pulsus (incredibile dictu)[4] biduo et duabus noctibus Hadrumētum pervenit, quod abest ab Zama circiter milia passuum trecenta. in hac fuga Numidae, qui simul cum eo ex acie excesserant, insidiati sunt ei: quos non solum effugit, sed etiam ipsos oppressit. Hadrumeti reliquos e fuga collegit: novis dilectibus paucis diebus multos contraxit.

Cum in apparando acerrime esset occupatus, Karthaginienses bellum cum Romanis composuerunt. ille nihilo secius exercitui postea praefuit resque in Africa gessit usque ad P. Sulpicium[5] C. Aurelium consules.

Note.—As regards the place-names, the Rhône is the river in the south of France, the Po is in the north of Italy, the Trebia is its tributary. Zama is a town near Carthage in the north of Africa, and Hadrumetum is in the same quarter.

[1] *In praesentiarum*, "for the present".

[2] *Quo valentior:* when a Final clause has an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree in it, instead of using *ut* you use *quo*.

[3] *Condiciones non convenerunt*, "the terms did not come together, fit, suit".

[4] *Incredibile dictu: Dictu* is the second Supine. The phrase means "unbelievable in the telling". *Dictu* is really the ablative of an old noun of the Fourth Declension, as are all such second Supines.

[5] *Usque ad P. Sulpicium*, "right on up to". We should say, "up till the time of".

LESSON XXXII.

Impersonal Verbs.—Passive of Dative Verbs.

There are certain verbs in Latin which can only be used in the third person singular and in the Infinitive. They never have a personal subject: hence they are called Impersonal Verbs. We say, I pity you, I may do this; Latin says *Miseret me tui, licet mihi hoc facere*, It pities me of you, it is allowed to me to do this.

Note these examples:—

(*a*) Impersonal Verbs taking the dative and Infinitive:—

Eis licet hoc facere. They may do this. (It is permitted to them to do this.)

Eis libet hoc facere. They are pleased to do this. (It is pleasing to them to do this.)

(*b*) Impersonal Verbs taking the genitive:—

Interest civium regem bene regere. It is the interest of the citizens that the king should rule well.

Refert militum imperatorem esse peritum. It concerns the soldiers that the general should be skilful.

Interest is the third person singular of *intersum*.

(*c*) Impersonal verbs taking the accusative and genitive:—

Miseret me, it pities me; that is, I pity.
Poenitet me, it repents me; that is, I repent.
Pudet me, it shames me; that is, I am ashamed.

Example:—

Pudet me hujus facti. I am ashamed of this deed.

You might also have,

Pudet me hoc fecisse. It shames me to have done this, *or*
Pudet me quod hoc feci. It shames me because I have done this.

(*d*) Impersonal Verbs taking the accusative and Infinitive:—

Oportet me, it behoves me; that is, I ought.
Decet me, it becomes me.
Juvat me, it delights me; that is, I delight.

Examples:—

Oportet me hoc facere. I ought to do this. (It behoves me to do this.)

Oportuit me hoc facere. I ought to have done this. (It behoved me to do this.)

Note.—If you say "it concerns me (you, etc.) to do this" and translate by *refert*, you use not *mei*, *tui*, but *mea*, *tua*—the ablative singular feminine of the adjective instead of the pronoun.

These are not all the Impersonal verbs, but they will enable you to recognise the construction when you see it. This Impersonal construction is the only one that can be employed in the Passive of verbs which have a dative in the Active:—

Invidetur mihi. I am envied. (It is envied to me.)
Parcitur mihi. I am spared, and so on.

Remember you can use these Impersonal verbs in the third person singular of all the tenses and in the Infinitive, and these are the only parts you can use. If you cannot form any of the tenses turn to the Vocabulary.

Exercise 32.

1. He pitied the son of the general whom he had routed at the Rhône. 2. I ought to defend my fatherland when called back home. 3. He ought to have defended his fatherland when called home. 4. I am delighted to have ended so great a war. 5. They are glad because they have collected those who remain from the rout (they are glad to have collected): 6. The Romans were ashamed at having been defeated at the Trebia by Hannibal. 7. I

know the Romans were ashamed of their defeat on the Trebia (*say* to have been defeated, *or* because they, etc.). 8. He knew the Romans had repented of the destruction of Carthage (because they had destroyed: Pluperfect Subjunctive explained in Lessons XXXVII. and XXXVIII.). 9. You may be consul at Rome and not be-at-the-head-of an army. 10. He might have been king at Carthage if he had wished. 11. It was his pleasure to remain at Hadrumetum collecting the remnants of his army (say *reliquos*). 12. It was the interest of the soldiers to obey the commands of Hannibal faithfully; it is ours to defeat Hannibal himself. 13. It concerns all of us to do what is right. 14. He said he had been permitted to prepare an army by fresh levies. 15. The Numidians repented of having set an ambush for Hannibal. 16. They have been persuaded to do this. 17. The fields will be injured by the Carthaginians. 18. If the fields are injured by the Carthaginians we shall send ambassadors to Rome. 19. The king will be obeyed by all good citizens (say, *optimus quisque*, "by each best man"). 20. The soldiers were commanded to depart from the city within three days.

Passage No. 13.

His enim magistratibus legati Karthaginienses Romam venerunt, qui senatui populoque Romano gratias agerent[1] quod cum iis pacem fecissent, ob eamque rem corona aurea eos donarent simulque peterent, ut obsides eorum Fregellis essent captivique redderentur. his ex senatus consulto responsum est: munus eorum gratum acceptumque esse; obsides, quo loco rogarent, futuros, captivos non remissuros, quod Hannibalem, cuius opera susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum nomini Romano, etiam nunc cum

[1] *Qui . . . agerent:* this is a "*qui* Final" clause. *Qui = ut ei; gratias agere*, to return thanks.

imperio apud exercitum haberent itemque fratrem eius Magonem. hoc responso Karthaginienses cognito Hannibalem domum et Magonem revocarunt. huc ut rediit, rex factus est, postquam praetor fuerat, anno secundo et vicesimo: ut enim Romae consules, sic Karthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur. in eo magistratu pari diligentia se Hannibal praebuit, ac fuerat in bello.

Note.—From *munus* to *Magonem* is *Oratio Obliqua*, that is *Reported Speech.* In the Subordinate clauses here you will find Subjunctives where you expect Indicatives, and in the Principal clauses *Infinitives.* Thus you would have expected *rogarent* to be *rogabant:* translate as if it were. *Susceptum foret* you would have expected to be *susceptum erat:* translate it as if it were. Note that *forem, fores, foret, foremus, foretis, forent* is another form of *essem, esses, esset*, etc. For *secundus, vicesimus* and *bini* see Table of Numerals pages 209, 210.

LESSON XXXIII.

Qui and Subjunctive.

1. *Legati Romam venerunt qui senatui gratias agerent.*

Ambassadors came to Rome to (who might) return thanks to the senate.

This might have been put thus:—

Legati Romam venerunt ut senatui gratias agerent.

Ambassadors came to Rome in order that they might return thanks, etc.

Qui then in the above sentence equals *ut ii*, and the Subjunctive is the ordinary one found in Final clauses. The tense employed will be the same as if *ut* had been used instead of *qui.*

In an ordinary clause introduced by *qui* you would have the Indicative :—

Legati Romam venerunt qui Carthagine missi erant.

The ambassadors came to Rome who had been sent from Carthage.

2. Again, in the sentence *Non is sum qui hoc faciam*, I am not the sort of man to do this (literally, I am not of that stamp who do this), *qui* is really equal to *ut ego*, and *is* to *talis*. The *qui* clause, then, is equivalent to an *ut* Consecutive clause; it expresses a consequence and therefore its verb is in the Subjunctive Mood—*qui Consecutive*. The tense will be the same as after *ut Consecutive*.

3. A sentence like "You are wrong because you have done this" you may translate, *Erras quod hoc fecisti*, and *quod*, because, takes the Indicative after it; but if for *quod* you put *qui*, to bring out the idea of cause you must put the verb in the Subjunctive (*qui* Causal): *Erras qui hoc feceris*, You are wrong who (since you) have done this.

Similarly when *qui* means "although I" (you, etc.) it is followed by a Subjunctive :—

Ego qui hoc dixissem condemnatus sum.

I although I had said this was condemned.

This of course could also have been translated :—

Ego cum hoc dixissem condemnatus sum.

Always be on the look out, then, for the verb after *qui* in translating, and if it is Subjunctive Mood see which of these shades of meaning is appropriate. Observe, however, the effect of *Oratio Obliqua* on *qui* clauses: see Lesson XXXVII.

Exercise 33.

1. Ambassadors are coming to Rome to return thanks to the senate and people of Rome. 2. Ambassadors have

come to Rome to return thanks to the senate and people of Rome. 3. Ambassadors went to Rome to seek peace from the Romans. 4. Ambassadors will go to Rome to seek peace from the Romans. 5. Envoys have come from Rome to examine into his loyalty and pay attention to his secret designs (see Passage No. 7). 6. The Carthaginians are not the sort of men to make peace. 7. The Romans were not the sort of men to ask-for (*peto*) peace. 8. He laid down his life sooner than his enmity, since indeed he never ceased in heart to war with the Romans (see Passage No. 7). 9. I, since I had come too late (*serius*), did not see my father. 10. He, since the war had been undertaken by his instrumentality, was driven from the State (use *expello* and ablative). 11. Although you have been the cause of this war we shall keep you in authority over the army. 12. They, since they had been recalled, returned home. 13. They, since they have been recalled, will return home. 14. They besought them to keep their captives at Fregellae. 15. They gave them a golden crown because they had made peace with them.

Passage No. 14.

Namque effecit ex novis vectigalibus non solum ut esset pecunia, quae Romanis ex foedere penderetur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerario reponeretur. deinde anno post, M. Claudio L. Furio consulibus, Roma legati Karthaginem venerunt. hos Hannibal ratus[1] sui exposcendi gratia[2] missos, priusquam iis senatus daretur,[3]

[1] *Ratus:* This governs the accusative and Infinitive, *hos . . . missos esse.*

[2] *Sui exposcendi gratia*, "for the sake of demanding him".

[3] *Priusquam . . . daretur*, "before the senate was given to them". *Senatum dare* is Latin idiom for giving an audience of the senate to any one. *Daretur* is Subjunctive because Hannibal fled intentionally before the audience could be given (see Lesson XXXV.).

navem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum[1] profugit. hac re palam facta Poeni naves duas, quae eum comprehenderent,[2] si possent[3] consequi, miserunt: bona eius publicarunt, domum a fundamentis disiecerunt, ipsum exulem iudicarunt.

At Hannibal anno tertio, postquam domo profugerat, L. Cornelio Q. Minucio consulibus, cum quinque navibus Africam accessit in finibus Cyrenaeorum, si forte Karthaginienses ad bellum Antiochi spe fiduciaque inducerentur,[4] cui iam persuaserat, ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficisceretur. huc Magonem fratrem excivit. id ubi Poeni resciverunt, Magonem eadem, qua fratrem,[5] absentem adfecerunt poena.

Note.—The two *quae* clauses at the beginning of this passage are examples of the Final *qui* construction: "money such as to be paid," etc. Remember *pecunia* is also subject of *superesset.*

LESSON XXXIV.

Irregular Comparisons.

In Lesson XXII. the usual methods of forming the Comparative and Superlative of Latin adjectives were explained. But some adjectives are very common and yet do not form these regularly. One or two of them you may have noticed already. Thus:—

[1] *In Syriam ad Antiochum:* We say "to Antiochus in Syria"; Latin says, "into Syria, to Antiochus".

[2] *Quae comprehenderent: qui* Final construction.

[3] *Si possent,* "if they should be able".

[4] *Si forte . . . inducerentur: Si forte* in primary time takes the Present Subjunctive, in secondary the Imperfect, meaning "in the hope that," literally, "if by chance".

[5] *Eadem, qua fratrem,* "with the same penalty with which".

Bonus, good,	gives	*melior*, better,	*optimus*, best.
Malus, bad,	,,	*pejor*, worse,	*pessimus*, worst.
Magnus, great,	,,	*major*, greater,	*maximus*, greatest.
Parvus, small,	,,	*minor*, smaller, less,	*minimus*, smallest, least.
Multus, many,	,,	*plus* (n.), more,	*plurimus*, most.

The following four are irregular in the superlative; you have seen most of them already:—

(*Extĕrus*, outer),	*exterior*, outer,	*extrēmus*, *extĭmus*, outmost.
Infĕrus, lower,	*inferior*, lower,	*infĭmus*, *īmus*, lowest.
(*Postĕrus*, later, next),	*posterior*, later,	*postrēmus* (*postŭmus*), last.
Supĕrus, upper,	*superior*, upper,	*suprēmus*, *summus*, highest.

Propior, nearer, and *proximus*, nearest, are also worth noting, with *prior*, former, and *prīmus*, first. These have no positive adjective.

Sometimes we form our comparatives and superlatives by prefixing "more" and "most," and this method is occasionally used in Latin, the adverb being *magis*, more, and *maxime*, most.

The following are some examples of the four adjectives given in the second list:—

Apud exteras civitates. Among foreign nations (literally, outer nations).

Milites in exterius vallum tela iaciebant. The soldiers were throwing darts on the outer rampart.

Ad extremum finem provinciae Galliae venerunt. They came to the outmost boundary of the province of Gaul.

Ex inferiore (*superiore*) *loco tela iaciebant.* From the lower (higher) place they were throwing darts.

Id postero die Flaminius senatui detulit. Flaminius laid that before the senate on the next day.

In imo monte constiterunt. They halted at the bottom of the hill (at the hill lowest).

In summo monte constiterunt. They halted on the top of the hill (on the hill topmost).

Note *primum*, firstly, *primo*, at first (adverbs); similarly *postremum*, lastly, *postremo*, at last.

The positives of the adjectives in these sentences may be neglected at present: they are rarely used.

Exercise 34.

1. They attacked the soldiers who were throwing darts upon the outer rampart. 2. They were sacrificing victims to Jupiter most high and holy. 3. The father is a head taller (*say* taller by a head) than his son. 4. He says the son is a head less (*say* less by a head) than the father. 5. To you, since you (*qui* Causal) have been my friend, I send this small gift. 6. More men perished by famine than by disease. 7. He said that very many had perished by famine. 8. All good patriots ought to defend their country as far as they can (all good patriots = *optimus quisque*). 9. They have advanced to the farthest boundaries of the province of Gaul. 10. For several hours the soldiers of Caesar had been hurling darts on the enemy. 11. Hannibal, after he had left (more idiomatic in Latin to use Perfect Indicative) his home, lived for several years among foreign nations. 12. At last he drew near the coast of Africa in the hope that he would win over the Carthaginians to the war. 13. At first they had halted on the top of the hill; at last they returned to the bottom. 14. Thinking they had been sent to seize him, Hannibal at last secretly embarked on a ship. 15. When this was disclosed, on the next day, the Carthaginians sent two ships to seize him (use *qui* Final).

Passage No. 15.

Illi[1] desperatis rebus cum solvissent naves ac vela ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervenit. de Magonis interitu duplex memoria prodita est: namque alii naufragio,

[1] Note that *illi* is subject of *solvissent* and *dedissent*.

alii a servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquerunt.[1] Antiochus autem, si tam in gerendo bello consiliis eius parere voluisset, quam in suscipiendo instituerat, propius Tiberi quam Thermopylis de summa imperii[2] dimicasset. quem etsi multa stulte conari videbat, tamen nulla deseruit in re. praefuit paucis navibus, quas ex Syria iussus erat in Asiam ducere, iisque adversus Rhodiorum[3] classem in Pamphylio[4] mari conflixit. quo[5] cum multitudine adversariorum sui superarentur, ipse, quo cornu rem gessit, fuit superior.

Antiocho fugato, verens ne dederetur, quod sine dubio accidisset,[6] si sui fecisset potestatem, Cretam ad Gortynios venit, ut ibi, quo se conferret,[7] consideraret. vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magno se fore[8] periculo,

[1] *Scriptum reliquerunt*, "have left it written": followed by accusative and Infinitive.

[2] *De summa imperii*, "concerning the sum total of empire," "concerning the empire of the world". Antiochus had formed a great power in Asia and had crossed into Greece bent on conquest; but he delayed too long, and gave the Romans time to send an army across into Greece which routed him at Thermopylae in 191 B.C. He then fled back to Asia.

[3] *Rhodiorum:* the Rhodians inhabited the island of Rhodes, off the south-west coast of Asia Minor.

[4] *Pamphylio:* the Mediterranean near Pamphylia, on the south coast of Asia Minor.

[5] *Quo:* understand *mari*, "in which sea".

[6] *Quod . . . accidisset:* Conditional sentence in Past time; non-fulfilment of condition implied.

[7] *Quo se conferret*, "Where am I to betake myself?" is a Deliberative question. This, even in the direct form, has its verb in the Subjunctive, *Quo me conferam*, whither am I to betake myself. Put indirectly, it becomes Present or Imperfect Subjunctive according to the sequence. Here we have secondary sequence, hence the Imperfect Subjunctive.

[8] *Fore:* remember this is another form for *futurum esse.*

nisi quid[1] providisset, propter avaritiam Cretensium: magnam enim secum pecuniam portabat, de qua sciebat exisse[2] famam. itaque capit[3] tale consilium.

LESSON XXXV.

Temporal Clauses.

If the English sentence begins with "when" and refers to past time, use *cum* with the Subjunctive. If you use *ubi* you will have the Indicative after it. You will also use the Subjunctive always both in Present and Past time if *cum* means "since". Remember also the peculiar construction illustrated in Lesson VI.

When I reach Rome I shall do this.
Ubi Romam advenero, hoc faciam.

In sentences like "He did this before the enemy came," the word "before" is translated by *priusquam* or *antequam*, and these take the Indicative to denote nothing but time: *Hoc fecit prius quam (ante quam) hostes venerunt;* but if you want to bring out the meaning thus, "He did this before the enemy should come," meaning that he was looking forward to their coming and wishing this to be done before that, you would employ the Subjunctive: *Hoc fecit prius quam hostes venirent*, "He did this before the enemy might come".

Sometimes the *prius* and *quam* are separate, thus: *Hoc prius fecit quam hostes venirent.* There is no change in meaning, however.

[1] *Quid:* with *si* or *nisi*, "any one," "anything," is masculine, *siquis;* Feminine, *siqua;* Neuter, *siquid.*

[2] *Exisse:* contracted for *exiisse*, which again is for *exivisse* (*exire*).

[3] *Capit:* this ought strictly to be *cepit*, "took," but the Present is put for effect. It is called the Historic Present.

Note these two sentences:—

He wished to see Caesar before Cicero came. *Caesarem videre voluit priusquam Cicero veniret.*

He happened to see Caesar before Cicero came. *Caesarem forte vidit priusquam Cicero venit.*

In the second sentence there is no intention expressed, in the first there is. In a sentence like "While he was writing I was reading" you say in Latin, *Dum scribebat ille ego legebam;* but where you say "While he was writing, I killed him," Latin says, very strangely, *Dum scribit eum interfeci.* We may put the Rule thus: If "while" with its verb denotes a longer period at some point in which a certain thing happens, Latin puts in the "while" clause a Present Indicative even in secondary time, and sometimes even in Oratio Obliqua.

With the Subjunctive again *dum* and *donec* mean "until," and denote purpose in addition to time. Thus:—

Manebam dum (or *donec*) *ille veniret.* I was waiting until he should come (intentionally).

Maneo dum (or *donec*) *ille veniat.* I am waiting till he may come (intentionally).

Manebam forte donec ille venit. I happened to wait until he came (I waited by chance).

Exercise 35.

1. When he had weighed anchor and set sail, two ships were sent to seize him. 2. When he has weighed anchor and set sail, we shall send two ships to seize him. 3. He was slain by a slave before he had written the letter. 4. The slave has been ordered to slay him before he writes the letter. 5. On the rout of Antiochus, he fled before the Romans could seize him. 6. While he was writing a letter to his mother in Rome, the slave slew him. 7. While his men were being overcome by the multitude of

their opponents, Hannibal was routing those with whom he had engaged. 8. While he was journeying from Carthage to Crete, pirates (*latrones*) attacked him (either *dum* or Present Participle). 9. Hannibal waited until the fleet of the Rhodians joined battle. 10. He was unwilling to halt (*consistere*) until he should get to the Gortynii in Crete. 11. While Hannibal was with Antiochus he was successful in all his battles. 12. This would undoubtedly have happened, had he put himself in the power of the Romans. 13. He resolved to depart before he should come into great danger on account of the avarice of the Cretans. 14. So long as Antiochus was willing to follow out (*say* obey) Hannibal's advice, he was successful in war. 15. In despair, Hannibal came to Antiochus in Syria.

Passage No. 16.

Amphoras complures complet plumbo, summas operit auro et argento. has praesentibus principibus deponit in templo Dianae,[1] simulans se suas fortunas illorum fidei credere. his in errorem inductis, statuas aëneas, quas secum portabat, omni sua pecunia complet easque in propatulo[2] domi abjicit. Gortynii templum magna cura custodiunt, non tam a ceteris quam ab Hannibale, ne ille inscientibus iis tolleret secumque duceret.

Sic conservatis suis rebus Poenus, illusis Cretensibus omnibus, ad Prusiam in Pontum[3] pervenit. apud quem eodem animo fuit erga Italiam, neque aliud quidquam egit quam regem armavit et exercuit adversus Romanos.

[1] *Diana:* the Roman goddess of the moon, goddess also of open-air pursuits—the chase and so forth.

[2] *Propatulum:* this denotes the open space in front of the house—the courtyard.

[3] *Pontus:* a district and kingdom of Asia Minor on the Black Sea. (*Pontus Euxinus* is the Latin name for the Black Sea, or simply *Pontus*.)

quem cum videret domesticis opibus minus esse robustum, conciliabat ceteros reges, adiungebat bellicosas nationes. dissidebat ab eo Pergamenus[1] rex Eumenes, Romanis amicissimus, bellumque inter eos gerebatur et mari et terra: quo magis cupiebat eum Hannibal opprimi.

LESSON XXXVI.

Numerals.

Occasionally through this book a Roman number has been introduced. It will be convenient here to give a few hints as to their use. The tables of Numerals, given on pages 209, 210, must be learned off by heart sooner or later. Don't try to do them all at once: take so many a day for a week or two, and continually revise them.

The *Cardinal numeral adjectives*, as they are called—one, two, three, etc.—are all, except the first three, indeclinable up to two hundred, that is, the same form is used whether the noun is masculine, feminine or neuter, and in all cases.

Ducenti, *-ae*, *-a*, two hundred, *trecenti*, *-ae*, *-a*, three hundred, and so on up to nine hundred, are declined like *boni*, *-ae*, *-a*.

Unus is declined like *solus*, *-a*, *-um* (see Lesson XVI.).

Duo and *Tres* are declined thus:—

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Du-o	du-ae	du-o	Tres	tria
Acc.	Du-o *or* du-ōs	du-as	du-o		
Gen.	Du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum	Trium	
Dat. / Abl.	Du-ōbus	du-ābus	du-ōbus	Tribus	

[1] *Pergamenus:* this means "belonging to Pergamum," a city in Mysia, a district in the north-west corner of Asia Minor.

Mille, a thousand, is an indeclinable adjective in the singular, but a noun governing the genitive in the plural: *mille naves*, a thousand ships; *duo millia* (or *milia*) *hominum*, two thousands of men.

Where we say twenty-three, thirty-five, the Romans said three and twenty, *tres et viginti;* five and thirty, *quinque et triginta;* but above a hundred they used the same form of expression without "and": one hundred (and) one, *centum unus;* two hundred (and) nine, *ducenti novem;* three hundred (and) thirty-five, *trecenti triginta quinque.*

The *Ordinal numerals* answer the question "which in order?" that is, they mean first, second, third. They are all declined like *bŏnus*. In the twenty-first year, *uno et vicesimo anno*. (Note the use of *unus* instead of *primus* in this case.)

The *Distributive numerals* are used to denote so many apiece. Thus, We gave them two books each. *Eis binos libros dedimus* (literally, two-each books, that is, two at a time).

Nouns in Latin which have a singular meaning in the plural require these numerals to make this meaning plural. Thus, "two camps" is *bina castra*, "two letters," *binae litterae*, but *duae epistolae*.

The *Numeral adverbs* answer to our once, twice, thrice, three times, twenty times, etc.: *Ter hoc fecit*, thrice he did this.

Exercise 36.

1. They had filled three hundred and sixty-five jars with lead. 2. Two hundred and twenty-nine jars had been filled with gold and silver. 3. He gave three apples to the boy. 4. He said he would have given (himself to have been about to give) two hundred ships to Hannibal.

5. Rome was founded in the year B.C. 753 (*say* in the 753rd year before Christ having been born). 6. The battle of Cannae was fought in B.C. 216. 7. Hannibal lived for seventy years. 8. Cæsar had given two ships to each leader. 9. We shall present them with two hundred sesterces each. 10. Darius set sail for Europe with more than a thousand ships. 11. Three times the Romans charged the enemy, but at last they were routed. 12. I have seen the city of Rome twenty times ere this. 13. Hannibal came down from the Alps into Italy with twenty-five thousand men. 14. For sixteen years under the leadership of Hannibal, Carthage waged war with Rome. 15. In B.C. 202, at Zama, the Romans utterly-conquered the Carthaginians (use *devinco*).

Passage No. 17.

Sed utrobique[1] Eumenes plus valebat propter Romanorum societatem; quem si removisset, faciliora sibi cetera fore[2] arbitrabatur. ad hunc interficiundum talem iniit rationem. classe paucis diebus erant decreturi. superabatur[3] navium multitudine: dolo erat pugnandum, cum par non esset armis. imperavit quam plurimas venenatas serpentes vivas colligi easque in vasa[4] fictilia conjici. harum cum effecisset magnam multitudinem, die ipso,

[1] *Utrobique*, "on both sides," that is, "by land and by sea".

[2] When you put *Si hunc removero, faciliora mihi cetera erunt* after a Past verb of saying, it becomes (*Dixit*) *si hunc removisset, faciliora sibi cetera fore*. The Future Perfect Indicative becomes Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Future Indicative becomes Future Infinitive.

[3] *Superabatur*, "he was being overcome," "he was inferior".

[4] *Vasa*, gen. *vasorum*, neut. plur. Second Declension. In the singular the Nominative is *vas*, gen. *vasis*, and the noun belongs to the Third Declension.

quo facturus erat navale proelium, classiarios[1] convocat iisque praecipit, omnes ut in unam Eumenis regis concurrant navem, a ceteris tantum satis habeant[2] se defendere. id illos facile serpentium multitudine consecuturos.[3] rex autem in qua nave veheretur, ut scirent, se facturum:[4] quem si aut cepissent aut interfecissent,[5] magno iis pollicetur praemio fore.[6] tali cohortatione militum facta classis ab utrisque in proelium deducitur. quarum acie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret[7] suis, quo loco Eumenes esset, tabellarium[8] in scapha cum caduceo[9] mittit.

[1] *Classiarios*, "the men belonging to the fleet," "the marines".

[2] *Satis habere*, "to consider it sufficient".

[3] *Consecuturos* is Future Infinitive after a verb of saying understood before *id;* so *facturum.*

[4] *Facturum ut scirent*, "he would cause them to know". An *Ut* Substantival clause.

[5] For *cepissent* and *interfecissent* compare *removisset* at the beginning, and note.

[6] *Magno praemio fore:* This is what is called the Predicative Dative. Latin says, "He promises that will be for a great reward to them": we say, "He promises that will be a great advantage to them," or "will bring a great reward to them". Similarly we say, "This was a great loss to him": Latin says, *Hoc ei magno damno fuit*, "This was for a great loss to him".

[7] *Palam facere*, "to make plain, to disclose". *Palam* is an adv. meaning "openly".

[8] *Tabellarius* is a letter-carrier or courier, and the *scapha* was a light skiff.

[9] *Caduceo:* This *caduceus* is the herald's staff, equivalent to our flag-of-truce.

LESSON XXXVII.

Oratio Obliqua.

Re-read in conjunction with this lesson, Lessons XV. and XVI.

If you report a man's words exactly as he said them, you are said to use the *Oratio Recta;* but when the words are quoted indirectly with the "I's" and "You's" changed to "He's" and so forth, you are said to use the *Oratio Obliqua* or Indirect Statement. Thus in Passage No. 17—"Do ye all attack the ship of King Eumenes alone, and count it enough merely to defend yourselves from the rest. You will easily manage that through the number of the serpents. I will see that you know in what ship the king is sailing"—these represent Hannibal's exact words. This is *Oratio Recta.* But, "He told them all to attack the ship of Eumenes only, and count it enough merely to defend themselves from the rest. They would easily manage that through the number of the serpents. He would see that they knew in what ship the king was sailing"—this is *Oratio Obliqua.*

Often, in Latin, long passages are found introduced by a verb of saying, and containing thereafter no verbs in the Indicative Mood, but only Infinitives and Subjunctives. Remember in such passages that the Infinitives represent the principal verbs of the *Oratio Recta,* and the Subjunctives, as a rule, the verbs of subordinate clauses, whether in the actual words these had Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. *Commands,* however, in the Imperative Mood become Subjunctive in such passages. Thus, *In regem Eumenem concurrite,* would be if reported, (*Dixit*) *in regem Eumenem concurrerent,* (He said) Let them attack King Eumenes.

The pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, of course, just like I, you, we, ye, in English, disappear in such a passage, and only *se*, *ille*, *is*, are found—the pronouns of the third person.

Examples.

These examples should be carefully read over and examined:—

I see the men who have attacked the town.	(He said) he saw the men who had attacked the town.
Video homines qui oppidum oppugnaverunt.	(*Dixit*) *se homines videre qui oppidum oppugnavissent.*
I see the men who are attacking the town.	(He said) he saw the men who were attacking the town.
Video homines qui oppidum oppugnant.	(*Dixit*) *se homines videre qui oppidum oppugnarent.*
I see the men who are about to attack the town.	(He said) he saw the men who were about to attack the town.
Video homines qui oppidum oppugnaturi sunt.	(*Dixit*) *se homines videre qui oppidum oppugnaturi essent.*
When I come to Rome I shall see Cæsar.	(He said) when he came to Rome he would see Cæsar.
Ubi Romam venero Caesarem videbo.	(*Dixit*) *se ubi Romam venisset Caesarem visurum esse.*

If the verb of saying had been in the Present tense (*dicit*), where in the above sentences you have the Pluperfect Subjunctive you would have the Perfect, where you have the Imperfect you would have the Present, and where you have the Future Participle with *essent* you would have the Future Participle with some part of *sim*.

Exercise 37.

1. He said that Eumenes had more power in both directions through the alliance with the Romans. 2. He said they would come together on the day on which he was intending to fight by sea. 3. He said he saw those

who were fighting in this naval battle. 4. He said he had seen those who were fighting in this naval battle. 5. He said he would take care that they knew in what ship the gold was being carried. 6. He thought if he removed this man all would be easy for him. 7. He said he had seen the general who had fought so long (*tamdiu*) with the Romans. 8. He says he has seen the messenger who was sent with the herald's wand to Eumenes. 9. He says those who are attacking the ship of Eumenes are being routed. 10. He says that those who attack the ship of Eumenes will be routed ("who attack" in Latin becomes "who may have attacked"). 11. Hannibal sends the messenger before the signal for battle can be given. 12. He said Hannibal sent the messenger before the signal for battle could be given. 13. He said Hannibal had sent the messenger before the signal for battle had been given. 14. He said Hannibal sent the letter-bearer to show his men where the king was. 15. He said he had commanded them all to attack the ship of King Eumenes alone.

Passage No. 18.

Qui ubi ad naves adversariorum pervenit epistolamque ostendens se regem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem deductus est, quod nemo dubitabat, quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum. tabellarius ducis nave declarata suis eodem, unde erat egressus, se recepit. at Eumenes soluta epistola nihil in ea repperit, nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinerent.[1] Cuius etsi causam mirabatur neque reperiebat, tamen proelium statim committere non dubitavit. horum in concursu Bithynii Hannibalis

[1] *Nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinerent:* "unless such as pertained to laughing at him," "jeering remarks". The Subjunctive is a consecutive one.

praecepto universi navem Eumenis adoriuntur. quorum vim rex cum sustinere non posset, fuga salutem petit: quam consecutus non esset, nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset, quae in proximo litore erant collocata. reliquae Pergamenae naves cum adversarios premerent acrius, repente in eas vasa fictilia, de quibus supra mentionem fecimus, conjici coepta sunt.[1]

LESSON XXXVIII.

Oratio Obliqua.

In this Lesson we shall give a few examples showing how Conditional Sentences appear in *Oratio Obliqua* :—

1. Future Conditions.

Direct Form.	*Indirect Form.*
If he does this he will be punished.	(He said) if he did this he would be punished.
Si hoc[2] *fecerit poenas dabit.*	(*Dixit*) *si id fecisset poenas eum daturum esse.*
If he were to do this he would be punished.	(He said) if he were to do this he would (should) be punished.
Si hoc faciat poenas det.	(*Dixit*) *si id faceret poenas eum daturum esse.*

2. Present Conditions.

If he were doing this he would be paying the penalty.	(He said) if he were doing this (now) he would be paying the penalty (now).
Si hoc faceret poenas daret.	(*Dixit*) *si id faceret poenas eum daturum esse.*

3. Past Conditions.

If he had done this he would have been punished.	(He said) if he had done this he would have been punished.
Si hoc fecisset poenas dedisset.	(*Dixit*) *si id fecisset poenas eum daturum fuisse.*

[1] *Coepta sunt:* note that *coepi* is used in the Passive when combined with a Passive Infinitive.

[2] *Hoc* of the Oratio Recta becomes *id* in the Oratio Obliqua.

Note that a Future Participle with the Perfect Infinitive instantly points to a condition referring to the past, and of which you imply the non-fulfilment.

Now turn back and examine Passage No. 13, in which there is a very good specimen of the Oratio Obliqua: "The Senate said, 'Your gift is pleasing and accepted; the hostages will be where you ask; we shall not send back the captives, because you are keeping Hannibal, by whose means the war has been undertaken, even now in supreme authority over the army'." *Gratum acceptumque esse*, in Hannibal's actual words were *gratum acceptumque est; rogarent* was *rogant; futuros* was *erunt; remissuros* was *remittemus; susceptum foret* was *susceptum est; haberent* was *habent.*

In Passage No. 17 an example of a Conditional sentence in Oratio Obliqua is found. Turn now and examine it.

Quem si aut cepissent aut interfecissent magno iis pollicetur praemio fore.

He promises that if they had taken or slain him it would be for a great reward to them. (*Pollicetur* is historic Present, practically equal to *pollicitus est.*)

His actual words were: "If you take him or slay him it will be a great reward to you".

Si hunc ceperitis aut interfeceritis magno vobis praemio erit.

Exercise 38.

1. He said he would not secure that unless he betook himself to the protection of his own troops (*say* within his own forces). 2. He said he would not secure that unless he were to betake himself to the protection of his own troops. 3. He said he would not have secured that unless he had betaken himself to the protection of his own troops. 4. He said he would not be a fool if he were doing that. 5. He promised that if they took or slew him there would be a great reward for them. 6. He

asserted that if they had taken or slain him there would have been a great reward for them. 7. He said that if they were to slay him there would be a great reward for them. 8. He said if he had not sought safety in flight he would have been slain (*say* it to have been about to be . . . that (*ut*) he should be slain: Imperfect Subjunctive). 9. He said if they should not seek safety in flight they would be slain. 10. He says if they do not seek safety in flight they will be slain (Future Perfect after Primary tense becomes Perfect Subjunctive). 11. He says if they had not sought safety in flight they would have been slain. 12. He says if they had not been fools they would not have been doing that. (Keep same tense of Subjunctive as in direct form.) 13. Although he was marvelling at the reason of this, yet he did not hesitate to join battle. 14. No one doubted but that he had brought some message concerning peace. 15. Having thus made known the ship to his own side he returned to the same place whence he had come.

Passage No. 19.

Quae iacta initio risum pugnantibus concitarunt,[1] neque quare id fieret poterat intellegi.[2] postquam autem naves suas oppletas conspexerunt serpentibus, nova re perterriti, cum, quid potissimum vitarent,[3] non viderent, puppes verterunt seque ad sua castra nautica rettulerunt. sic Hannibal consilio arma Pergamenorum superavit, neque tum solum, sed saepe alias pedestribus copiis pari prudentia pepulit adversarios.

[1] *Concitarunt:* contracted for *concitaverunt.*

[2] *Poterat intellegi:* Impersonal construction: "nor was it able to be perceived".

[3] *Vitarent:* Deliberative Subjunctive: not "what they were avoiding," but "what they were to avoid".

Quae dum in Asia geruntur,[1] accidit casu ut legati Prusiae Romae apud[2] T. Quintium Flamininum consularem cenarent, atque[3] ibi de Hannibale mentione facta ex iis unus diceret eum in Prusiae regno esse. id postero die Flamininus senatui detulit. patres conscripti, qui Hannibale vivo[4] numquam se sine insidiis futuros existimarent, legatos in Bithyniam miserunt, in iis Flamininum, qui ab rege peterent, ne inimicissimum suum secum haberet sibique dederet. his Prusia negare ausus non est: illud recusavit, ne id a se fieri postularent,[5] quod adversus ius hospitii esset: ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent:[6] locum, ubi esset, facile inventuros.

LESSON XXXIX.

Prepositions—Conjunctions.

In this lesson a few hints on the prepositions will be given. These in Latin help the inflections and, as it were, give fresh cases to the noun. The inflections in Latin show the relation between the noun and other words in the sentence, but often require prepositions to help them in doing this, and to indicate special relations. Latin, then, has two ways of showing the relation between nouns and other words, *Prepositions* and *Inflections*. We have practically only one—*Prepositions*.

[1] *Geruntur:* note the tense, Present Indicative.

[2] *Apud:* often used in this sense, meaning "at the house of".

[3] *Accidit casu ut . . . atque*, "it happened that they were dining . . . and one said". Two Substantival clauses.

[4] *Hannibale vivo:* Ablative Absolute.

[5] *Ne . . . postularent:* a command becoming Subjunctive in the Oratio Obliqua after *recusavit:* "Let them not demand".

[6] *Comprehenderent:* also represents a command.

In Latin nine prepositions always take the ablative. All other prepositions take the accusative, except four which take the ablative or accusative.

These nine prepositions are :—

A (*ab* before a vowel, *abs* before *tē*, thee), from, by.
Cum, along with
Coram, in the presence of.
De, concerning, down from.
Ex (*e* before a consonant, except *h*), out of.
Pro, before, on behalf of.
Prae, on account of, in comparison with.
Sine, without.
Tenus, as far as.

In and *sub* take the ablative or accusative according to the meaning. (*Super* and *subter* are found with both cases, but may be neglected at present.) When *motion towards* is meant they take the accusative.

In Italiam pervenit. He came into Italy.
Sub muros profectus est. He advanced up to the walls.

When *rest in* or *motion within* is meant they have the ablative :—

In urbe manebat. He was staying in the city.
In urbe ambulabat. He was walking in the city.
Sub muris stabant. They were standing beneath the walls.

Conjunctions.

These, as has been already pointed out, join words or sentences. They may be simple Connectives like *et*, *atque*, *-que* = and. More commonly, however, they have some special meaning. Thus we have conjunctions denoting—

Time: *cum*, *postquam*, *antequam*, *ubi*, *donec*.
Place: *ubi*, *quo*, *unde*.
Reason: *quod*, *quare*, *cum* (since).
Purpose: *ut*, *ne*, *quo*.
Result: *ut* (so that).

Condition: *si*, *nisi*.
Concession: *etsi*.
Comparison: *ut*, *quo* (with eo), *quasi*, *tanquam*.

Exercise 39.

1. They thought that during the life of Hannibal they would never be free from plots. 2. We have sent ambassadors to Bithynia, among them Flamininus, to ask aid from the king. 3. We were dining in the house of one of the ex-consuls. 4. They will cause such terror in the army of the Romans that no one will dare to come up to the walls (see Passage No. 11). 5. Hannibal drew up (*instruere*) his line-of-battle beneath the walls of this town. 6. Even from the Red Sea they attempted to carry war into Italy. 7. I was of course afraid of that actually (*usu*) happening which happened. 8. And so he retreated to the same place whence he had come. 9. Unless Hannibal had taken (*sumo*) the poison (*venenum*) he would have been put-to-death by the Romans. 10. He could not see wherefore that was being done. 11. After the Romans had beset (*obsideo*) him on all sides he took the poison. 12. The more money you have the more wretched you will be (*say* by what you shall have more money, by that you will be more wretched: *quo . . . eo*). 13. The ships were so covered with serpents that they could not see what to avoid. 14. He said he would easily have found the place where they were if he had so wished. 15. They retreated before the enemy could seize their ships.

Passage No. 20.

Hannibal enim uno loco se tenebat in castello, quod ei a rege datum erat muneri,[1] idque sic aedificarat, ut in

[1] *Muneri* is called a Predicative Dative. We say "had been given as a gift," Latin says "had been given for a gift".

omnibus partibus aedificii exitus haberet, scilicet verens ne usu veniret,[1] quod accidit. huc cum legati Romanorum venissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab ianua prospiciens Hannibali dixit plures praeter consuetudinem armatos apparere. qui imperavit ei, ut omnes fores aedificii circumiret ac propere sibi nuntiaret, num eodem modo undique obsideretur. puer cum celeriter, quid esset, renuntiasset omnesque exitus occupatos ostendisset, sensit id non fortuito factum, sed se peti neque sibi diutius vitam esse retinendam. quam ne alieno arbitrio dimitteret, memor pristinarum virtutum venenum, quod semper secum habere consuerat, sumpsit.

Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfunctus[2] laboribus, anno acquievit septuagesimo.

LESSON XL.

Adverbs.

If we know the corresponding adjective it is very easy in Latin to make the adverb. Thus in adjectives of the first class you simply add *-ē* to the stem, as—*durus*, hard, *dur-ē* (hardly), stubbornly; *liber*, free, *liber-ē*, freely.

Benĕ, well, *malĕ*, badly, are very common and should be noted on account of their exceptional quantity, and *benĕ* for its exceptional form also.

But adjectives of the second class form adverbs by adding *-iter* to the stem; when the adjective is like *ingens* simply by adding *-er*. Thus we get *ferox*, fierce, *ferociter*, fiercely; *prudens*, prudent, *prudenter*, prudently.

[1] *Verens ne usu veniret*, "fearing lest in experience (in actual life, actually) that might come which came".

[2] *Perfunctus: perfungor* takes the ablative case after it, where you would expect the accusative. *Fruor*, I enjoy, *potior*, I get possession of, *vescor*, I feed upon, *utor*, I use, take a similar ablative.

There is a large class of adverbs, however, in *-ō*, which, by the rule given above, should be in *-ē*. As *falso*, falsely (*falsus*); *necessario*, necessarily (*necessarius*); *subito*, suddenly (*subitus*).

Comparison of Adverbs.

If you can compare the corresponding adjective the adverb gives no trouble. The comparative of the adverb is simply the neuter singular of the comparative adjective. The superlative is got from the superlative of the adjective by changing *-us* into *-ē*:—

Liber, free, *liberē*, freely, *liberius*, *liberrime*.
Durus, hard, *durē*, hardly, *durius*, *durissime*.
Prudens, prudent, *prudenter*, prudently, *prudentius*, *prudentissime*.

Just as there are a few adjectives compared irregularly, so there are a few adverbs. Thus we have:—

Bene (*bonus*), well,	*melius*, better,	*optime*, best.
Male (*malus*), badly,	*pejus*, worse,	*pessimum*, worst.
Multum (*multus*), much,	*plus*, more,	*plurimum*, most.
Magnopere (*magnus*), greatly,	*magis*, more,	*maxime*, most.
Non multum (*parvus*), little,	*minus*, less,	*minime*, least.
Diu, long,	*diutius*, longer,	*diutissime*, longest.
Saepe, often,	*saepius*, oftener,	*saepissime*, oftenest.
———	*potius*, rather,	*potissimum*, especially.

Exercise 40.

1. The throwing of these things suddenly produced laughter in the combatants. 2. They were so terrified by the strange occurrence that they could not see what especially to avoid. 3. Ill-success is the mark of a bad general. (Ill-success = to wage war badly.) 4. Although they saw Antiochus making many very foolish attempts they on no occasion deserted him (see Passage No. 15). 5. Since he saw he was not strong enough (*say* too little

strong) in the resources of his own kingdom, he won over all other princes (see Passage No. 16). 6. A fierce war was being waged (*say* a war was being waged fiercely) between them both by land and sea: therefore Hannibal was the more eager for his overthrowal (see Passage No. 16). 7. He said he would very easily find the place where he was. 8. He ordered the soldiers to bring him word speedily if he was beset on all sides. 9. The boy very quickly reported that all the outlets were seized. 10. The Carthaginians perceived this was no chance occurrence, and their empire could no longer be maintained. 11. I will bring you word quickly what it is. 12. If you had ordered us we would easily have found where he was (from *facilis* you expect *faciliter,* but the adverb is *facile*). 13. He saw that they had not come by chance, but were seeking him. 14. Mindful of his former valour, he took the poison not to lose his life at the bidding of another. 15. The messengers reported that an unusual number of armed men were in sight.

HINTS FOR FURTHER STUDY.

You are now assumed to have worked carefully through this book, revising thoroughly according to some of the methods suggested in the Introduction. If this assumption be correct, you may be said to have mastered the Rudiments of Latin. You now know enough grammar, and have a wide enough vocabulary, to begin to read Latin for yourself, and if your main object in learning Latin is to be able to read it intelligently and easily, you need not trouble about studying any more grammar in grammar books. You will learn grammar in the best possible way by reading much and carefully.

However, if you wish to study a formal grammar, you

cannot do better than get *Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar* (Ginn & Co., Boston, Mass.). You will find it thoroughly reliable, and very convenient for reference. If a more condensed statement of the rules and principles of the language seem sufficient, there is *Allen & Greenough's Shorter Latin Grammar*, published at 95 cents. The larger book costs $1.20.

You have already done enough work in turning English into Latin to give you a sufficiently sound foundation on which to build a knowledge of Latin by means of reading in Latin. It is much more difficult for the private student to correct his English-Latin work than his Latin-English. Yet, if he is determined to acquire skill in writing Latin prose, even the private student can succeed. If you have any thought of preparing for any sort of examination in Latin you must keep up your English-Latin; if not, you will be well advised to drop it at this point, and give your full attention to reading in Latin.

Those who determine to go on, as private students, with English-Latin may get *Moulton's Preparatory Latin Composition*, also published by Ginn & Co. This is made up of two parts, which, if desired, may be had separately. Part I. is based directly upon the portions of *Cæsar's Commentaries* and *Cicero's Orations* usually read in schools, and therefore can be used parallel with the Latin texts suggested a little farther on for reading. Part II. offers a systematic drill in Latin Syntax. For advanced work *Bradley's Lessons in Latin Prose* (Longmans, Green, & Co.) is an excellent book, and there is an exceedingly good key to it published. If at all possible, however, this part of the subject should be taught, or, at any rate, your versions should be corrected by one who knows Latin. Your version may differ from the key, and yet be good Latin, so, if you can at all manage it, secure some teaching at least through correspondence. Correspondence

classes are rapidly increasing in America, and you may find opportunity through one of these for the instruction you need in Latin composition. Bradley has also a more elementary book, *Latin Prose Exercises*, which may be used instead of Moulton's, if preferred.

Most of you, however, desire to go on with Latin reading, in which you are much more independent. Your main difficulty, at your present stage, is your very limited vocabulary. Even if you have mastered all the words we have used in this book, you will find that any Latin author you take up uses a great many words that you do not know. Your first need then is a dictionary. The one most widely used in America is probably *Lewis's Latin Dictionary for Schools*, published by the American Book Company at $4.50. This is quite sufficient for any ordinary use. If, however, cost is an important consideration, you can get *Cassell's Latin Dictionary*, sold for $1.50, a good book for the price, with both Latin-English and English-Latin parts.

Before beginning to read on your own account you should make sure of the Irregular Verbs. Time spent on them at the beginning will be amply repaid in time saved during your reading. Turn to the list on p. 227. Get a bit of paper about the size of this page, and cover up the whole of p. 227, leaving only the first part of each verb exposed; *abdo*, *abigo*, and so on. Try if you can put in *abdidi*, *abditum*, *abdere* (*to hide*); move down your paper to see if you are right; then try to put in *abegi*, *abactum*, *abigere* (*to drive away*). Work through the whole of these verbs in this way time after time. By-and-by cover up all but the English meaning on the right-hand side of the page, and try to fill in all the rest. You will never regret the time you spend in mastering this list.

In beginning to read for yourself in Latin, you cannot improve on the usual custom of starting with a portion

of the writings of Julius Cæsar. His Commentaries *De Bello Gallico* supply excellent practice in good Latin. It does not really matter very much which book of the *De Bello Gallico* you begin with, but Book IV. and part of Book V. deal with Cæsar's proceedings in Britain, and therefore may be of special interest to us. Almost all the educational publishers have editions of Cæsar. If you feel that you need all the help you can get, you may buy *Allen & Greenough's Cæsar*, containing all seven books, with notes, maps, illustrations, etc. This is published by Ginn & Co. at $1.40. Even with the help of all the notes you can get, you will find yourself baffled at times to make complete sense out of your author. To meet such difficulties, you can provide yourself with a Key. Hinds & Noble, of New York, publish at 50 cents what is probably the best literal translation in this country.

When you have read through Books IV. and V. of the Gallic War (or any other two books of Cæsar) you can try a bit of Cicero. But as to the Latin version, you should not this time get a school edition with notes. The first time you are in a town of any size, go to the second-hand book shops and I shall be astonished if you do not find some odd volumes of Cicero going for a trifling sum. The *De Amicitia* is perhaps the best to begin with.

From Cicero you might pass to Virgil to see what Latin poetry is like. Book VI. of the Æneid is usually regarded as the most interesting.

By this time you know pretty well what sort of thing Latin is, and your own inclination must guide you as to further reading. Prof. Wilkins has a *Roman Literature Primer*, published by Macmillan for 35 cents. Read this, or some other account of Roman Literature, and you will find what treasures are there for the digging, and it will be for you to choose where to put in the spade.

PART II.

KEY TO THE PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION.

Passage No. 1.

Literal Version.

HAMILCAR, son of Hannibal, by surname Barca, a Carthaginian, in the first Punic war, but in the last times, quite a young man, in Sicily, began to be in command of the army. When (although) before the arrival of him both by land and by sea the affairs of the Carthaginians were being carried on badly, he himself, when he was present, never to the enemy yielded, nor gave a place of injuring, and often on the contrary, a chance having been given, attacked and ever departed superior (victor). Which having been done, when almost everything in Sicily the Carthaginians had lost, he (that man) so defended Eryx that a war was not seeming to have been waged in that place. Meanwhile the Carthaginians by means of a fleet at the Aegatian Islands by Caius Lutatius consul of the Romans having been defeated, resolved to make an end of the war and that matter entrusted to the judgment of Hamilcar.

Notes.

Extremis: this is a superlative with no positive. Its comparative is *exterior*, and means "outer". It is therefore irregular. It means "outmost" or "last".

Cum: We have said this with a Past tense takes the Subjunctive

and means *when* or *since;* it may also mean *although.* This is the meaning here.

Gererentur: find what *gererent* is, and this is the Passive of it.

Hosti: is dative after *cessit* (from *cedo*). If you have any difficulty in finding the Present of the verb in the Vocabulary owing to the change (as, for example, *cedo, cessi*) from Present to Perfect, or for any other reason, consult the Table of Irregular Verbs given at the end of the book.

Occasione data: you can be pretty sure when an ablative has a Participle with it that it is Ablative Absolute, as here.

Superior: the positive of this adjective is *superus*, upper, applied to a thing which is above another; comparative is *superior* as here, higher, superior; superlative is *supremus* or *summus*, highest.

Quo facto: note the relative connecting this sentence to the one before, where we would say "on this being done". *Quo facto* is, of course, Ablative Absolute.

Ut . . . videretur: this is consecutive *ut*, "so that".

Second Version.

Hamilcar, the son of Hannibal, by surname Barca, a Carthaginian, near the end of the first Punic war, took over the command of the army in Sicily (while) quite a young man. Although before his arrival the Carthaginians were faring badly both by land and sea, he himself when he was present never yielded to the enemy nor gave them a chance of doing him harm. On the contrary, often when a chance had been given, he attacked (them) and always came off the victor. And on this being done (by doing this), although the Carthaginians had lost almost everything in Sicily, he so defended Eryx that the war did not seem to have been waged in that spot. Meanwhile the Carthaginians on their defeat at the Aegatian Islands by Caius Lutatius, consul of the Romans, with a fleet, resolved to end the war and entrusted that business to the discretion of Hamilcar.

Make absolutely certain that you know every word in

this before going on—parts of verbs, stems of nouns, etc. Use freely the Table of Irregular Verbs.

Passage No. 2.

Literal Version.

That man (Hamilcar) although he was blazing with the greed of warring yet thought he must pay-regard-to peace, because he was perceiving that his fatherland, worn out by expenses, longer to endure the calamities of war was not able, but in such a way that he at once began to ponder in mind, if only things had been a little repaired, to renew war and attack the Romans with arms, until they had either by their valour conquered or vanquished had surrendered. With this design he made peace, in which so great was his boldness, since Catulus was denying the war he would end unless he (Hamilcar) with his men, who had held Eryx, their arms having been left should leave Sicily, that, his fatherland lying prostrate, he himself said he would rather perish than with so great disgrace (he would) return home: for (he said) it not to be of his valour the arms received from his fatherland against the enemy to surrender to his foes. To the obstinacy of this man Catulus yielded.

Notes.

Ita . . . ut: the meaning is, "he thought in such a way that he at once began to ponder". Note, of course, *agitaret* Consecutive Subjunctive.

Essent refectae: this Subjunctive will be explained more fully when we treat of conditional sentences. The Subjunctive is due to the fact that this is Hamilcar's thought—Oratio Obliqua, as we call it. All subordinate clauses after verbs of saying or thinking have the Subjunctive Mood in Latin. What were principal clauses before have the Infinitive.

Persequi: this is a verb which is conjugated like the Passive of *rego*, but is active in meaning. Such verbs, Passive in form but Active in meaning, are called Deponents. They are found in each of the four conjugations.

Vicissent . . . dedissent: again Subjunctive, because they are subordinate clauses in Oratio Obliqua. Hamilcar's thought is, "Until they subdue . . . until they surrender". This, when reported, has to go into the Pluperfect Subjunctive in Latin.

Nisi decederent: Catulus said, "I will not end, unless they shall be departing". This "shall be departing" becomes Imperfect Subjunctive when the words are reported; just as in English they become "he would not end unless they should depart".

Note the pronouns *ipse* subject to *dixerit*, *se* referring to *ipse* but the subject of *periturum*. *Se*, *suus* always refer to the subject of the main verb, here to *dixerit*.

Second Version.

Although he was ablaze with eagerness for war, yet he thought he must pay regard to peace because he felt that his fatherland worn out by the expense, could not longer endure the disasters of the war. Accordingly he at once began to ponder in heart, if only things had been restored a little, the renewal of the war and an attack on the Romans until they had won the day by their valour, or had been conquered and had surrendered. With this design he concluded peace. In this, such was his boldness, when Catulus refused to end the war, unless he and his men who had held Eryx should lay down their arms and leave Sicily, that he said he would rather perish amid his country's ruins[1] than return home with such dishonour; for it was not in keeping with his valour to surrender to his foes the arms he had received from his fatherland against the enemy. Catulus yielded to his obstinacy.

[1] *Succumbente patria:* his fatherland lying low, Ablative Absolute. This may be translated very freely as above.

Passage No. 3.

Literal Version.

But that man, when he came to Carthage, otherwise by much than he had hoped, found the State holding itself. For by the length (duration) of the foreign evil, so great an internal war had blazed out that never in like danger Carthage was unless when it was destroyed. At first, the mercenary soldiers, whom they had used against the Romans, revolted; of whom there was a number of twenty thousands. These estranged all Africa, attacked Carthage itself. By which evils, so were the Carthaginians terrified, that even aids from the Romans they sought and obtained them. But at last, when almost now to despair they had come, they made Hamilcar general. That man, not only the enemy from the walls of Carthage removed, when more than a hundred thousand of armed men had been made, but even drove them to that point that, by the narrowness of the places shut in, more (men) by famine than by steel were perishing.

Notes.

Ut: note this use of *ut*, meaning "when," taking the Indicative.

Rempublicam se habentem: accusative after *cognovit.*

Ut . . . fuerit: This is of course a Consecutive clause. Note *tantum.*

Viginti milium: a Descriptive Genitive, describing *numerus.*

Quibus malis: Latin says "By which evils"; we would say "By these evils".

Adeo . . . ut . . . petierint: Consecutive Subjunctive again.

Amplius: an adverb meaning "more". You might expect the ablative after it, since "than" is omitted; but in Latin this adverb often has no effect on the case of the number with it. *Amplius centum milia* (not *centum milibus*), more (than) 100,000 (*centum*, a hundred, is indeclinable).

Eo . . . ut: This is again a Consecutive clause: *eo*, "to that point," "to such a point," that (*ut*).

Second Version.

But when he came to Carthage, he found the state of his country far different from what he had expected. For through the duration of their misfortunes abroad, so serious an internal war had arisen, that Carthage was never in like danger unless when it was destroyed. At first the mercenary soldiers, whom they had employed against the Romans, revolted. The number of these was twenty thousand. These alienated the whole of Africa (and) attacked Carthage itself. The Carthaginians were so panic-stricken at these disasters that they even sought aid from the Romans and obtained it. But at last when now they were reduced almost to despair, they made Hamilcar commander-in-chief. He not only removed the enemy from the walls of Carthage, although more than a hundred thousand armed men had come together, but even drove them to such a pass that, shut in by the straitened nature of the position, more were perishing by famine than by steel.

Passage No. 4.

Literal Version.

All the estranged towns, among these Utica and Hippo, the strongest of all Africa, he restored to his fatherland. Nor with that was he content, but he even extended the bounds of (her) empire, in all Africa so great repose made that in it no war seemed within many years to have been. These matters, in accordance with his wish, having been accomplished, with a confident heart and hostile to the Romans, by which the more easily a cause of warring he might find, he effected that as general with an army into Spain he should be sent, and thither with himself he took his son Hannibal of nine years. There was

besides along with him a young man, distinguished, handsome, Hasdrubal; concerning this man therefore we have made mention because Hamilcar having been slain, he was in command of the army, and great things carried out, and first by bribery the ancient manners of the Carthaginians corrupted, and of the same man after the death, Hannibal from the army received the command.

Notes.

Patriae: Dative of the Recipient, the one who receives.

Imperium means firstly "absolute authority," then "dominion," "sway," and almost like our "empire".

Tota Africa: Note the Ablative of Place without the preposition *in*.

Ut . . . videretur: a Consecutive *ut* clause. Latin says "no war seemed to have been"; we should say "it seemed as if there had been no war".

Multis annis: ablative of the time within which, as often in Latin: "within many years".

Ex sententia mea, sua, nostra: Latin phrases for "in accordance with my, his, our view, opinion, wish," etc.

Fidenti animo: Ablative of Description.

Secum: after the personal pronouns, *me, te, se, nobis, vobis,* you place *cum,* meaning "along with," instead of before them; *mecum,* "along with me," *tecum,* etc. Note *se* here because referring to the subject of the main verb, *duxit.*

Princeps (= *primus,* first) is in apposition with the subject of *pervertit.*

Largitione: Ablative of Means, by "means of bribery".

Second Version.

He restored to his country all the towns that had been lost, among these Utica and Hippo, the strongest in all Africa. And he was not content with that, but also extended the limits of her sway, and restored such profound repose in all Africa, that it seemed as if there had

been no war in it for many years. On the satisfactory completion of these affairs, with a confident heart full of enmity towards Rome, he secured his despatch to Spain with an army as commander-in-chief. Along with him he took thither his son Hannibal, nine years of age. There was besides along with him a distinguished and handsome youth, Hasdrubal. Of this man we have made mention for this reason, because (that) when Hamilcar was slain, he took command of the army and performed great exploits, and was the first to corrupt by bribery the ancient character of the Carthaginians; and after the same man's death, Hannibal received from the army the supreme command.

Passage No. 5.

Literal Version.

But Hamilcar, after the sea he crossed and into Spain came, great exploits performed with favourable fortune: the greatest and most warlike races he subdued, with horses, arms, men, money all Africa he enriched. Here when into Spain the war to carry he was deliberating, in the ninth year, after into Spain he had come, in battle fighting against the Vettones, he was slain. Of this man, the continual hatred towards the Romans especially, to have stirred up the second Punic war (seems). For Hannibal the son of him, by the continual entreaties of his father, to that point was brought that to perish than the Romans not to try he was preferring.

Notes.

Posteaquam = *postquam*, after (conjunction).

Transiit . . . venit: note Latin using the Perfect where we rather employ the Pluperfect.

Secunda fortuna: an Ablative of Description, "with success".

Totam locupletavit Africam: note the order—adjective, verb, noun. This is for variety, to avoid two accusatives coming together. Similarly *secundum bellum Poenicum*, "second war Punic," to avoid two adjectives coming together.

Hic is probably the adverb "here". It might be nominative masculine singular, "this man".

Inferre is the Present Infinitive of an irregular verb, "to carry into". It will be explained in Lesson XXVIII.

Nono anno, "within the ninth year," Ablative of Time within which.

Assiduis patris obtestationibus: note the order—adjective, genitive, noun.

Eo: as before (Passage No. 3, end), "to that point," "to such a pass," etc.

Ut . . . mallet: Consecutive clause after *eo*, hence Subjunctive. *Mallet* is Imperfect Subjunctive of an irregular verb, *malo*, I prefer (see Lesson XXX.).

Interire, as also *transire* (line 1), are compounds of an irregular verb, *eo*, *ivi*, *itum*, *ire*, which will be explained in Lesson XXVII.

Second Version.

But Hamilcar, after crossing the sea and coming into Spain, performed great exploits with success (carried out important operations with success): subdued very strong (and) very warlike nations, (and) enriched the whole of Africa with horses, arms, men, (and) money. Here, while he was planning the carrying of the war into Italy, in the ninth year after his arrival in Spain, he was slain in battle against the Vettones. His undying hatred for the Romans seems to have been the chief cause of the second Punic war. For Hannibal, his son, was brought to such a state by his father's continual entreaties that he preferred to perish than not make trial of the Romans (*that is*, make trial of the might of Rome).

Passage No. 6.

Literal Version.

Hannibal, son of Hamilcar, a Carthaginian. If it is true, which no one doubts, that the Roman people all nations in virtue has surpassed, it must not be denied (there is not a denying) Hannibal by so much to have surpassed all other generals in forethought, by how much the Roman people surpasses in bravery all nations. For as often as with it he engaged (fought) in Italy, always he departed superior. As to which, unless at home of his own citizens by the envy he had been weakened, the Romans he seems to conquer to have been able. But of many the disparaging utterly conquered of one the valour. This man, as though by a legacy left, the hatred of his father towards the Romans so preserved, that sooner his life than that he laid down; who indeed, when from his country he had been driven and of foreign resources was in need, never ceased in mind to war with the Romans. For, that I may pass over Philip, whom, absent, an enemy he made (rendered) to the Romans, of all at those times the most powerful king was Antiochus.

Notes.

Tanto . . . quanto: these are Ablatives of Measure of Difference.

Antecedat: this is Subjunctive in Oratio Obliqua, that is in an adjective clause after a verb of saying (*infitiandum*). In Oratio Recta, plain straightforward statement, it would be Present Indicative. Thus: *Oratio Recta*, I see the man who is selling fish; *Oratio Obliqua*, He says he sees the man who is selling fish. The verb "is selling" in the second clause would be Subjunctive: *Dicit se hominem videre qui pisces venditet.*

Sic . . . ut . . . deposuerit: Consecutive Subjunctive.

Alienarum opum indigeret: indigeo, "to be in want of," takes a *genitive* case where you might expect the *accusative*. It also sometimes has the ablative.

Omnium is the usual genitive after a superlative.
Iis temporibus: Ablative of Point of Time, "at those times".

Second Version.

Hannibal, son of Hamilcar, a Carthaginian. If it is true, as no one doubts, that the Roman people has surpassed all nations in valour, it must not be denied that Hannibal as far excelled all other commanders in forethought as the Roman people surpasses all nations in bravery. For as often as he engaged in battle with them in Italy, he always came off victorious. And had he not been weakened by the jealousy of his own countrymen at home it seems as if he would have been able to overcome the Romans. But the detraction of many utterly overcame the valour of one. This man, however, so preserved his father's hatred for the Romans, left as it were by a legacy, that he sooner laid down his life than that. Since, indeed, when he had been driven from his country and was in need of the resources of strangers, he never ceased to wage war in mind with the Romans. For, to pass over Philip, whom, though he was not with him, he made an enemy of Rome, of all at that time the most powerful king was Antiochus.

Passage No. 7.

Literal Version.

This man with so great greed of warring he inflamed that even from the Red Sea arms he attempted to carry against Italy. To whom when ambassadors had come Roman, who concerning his loyalty should make inquiries and pay attention to his secret designs, in order that Hannibal into suspicion to the king they might bring, as though by them having been bribed other things than before he was thinking, and when that in vain they had

not done, and that Hannibal had found out, and himself from the more secret plans to be being separated had seen, an occasion having been given he went to the king, and to him when many things concerning his own loyalty and hatred towards the Romans he had recounted, this he added: "My father," said he, "Hamilcar, I being a little boy, as being not more than nine years born, into Spain as general setting out from Carthage, to Jupiter most high and holy victims sacrificed. Which divine business while it was being accomplished, he asked from me whether I was willing to go with him to the camp. That when gladly I had accepted and from him to seek had begun that he should not hesitate to take me, then 'I will do so,' says he, 'if to me the pledge which I am demanding, you shall have given'."

Notes.

Suspicionem . . . tanquam: the Latin says "into suspicion as if," and follows it by accusative and Infinitive. It is just like "into the suspicion *that* having been bribed, etc," where "that" stands for *tanquam.*

Puerulo me is Ablative Absolute, so also *nato.*

Utpote is an adverb, meaning "as," or "since," or "as being".

Amplius: cf. Passage No. 3, at end.

Proficiscens, "when making arrangements for departing".

Quaero means "to ask," and is followed by *ne,* "whether," placed after the verb and taking the Subjunctive Mood: *vellemne,* "whether I was willing".

Coepissem: this verb, "to begin," is used only in the Perfect tense and those derived from it. The Present is supplied by *incipio.*

Ne dubitaret is of course a Substantival clause.

Second Version.

He inflamed this man with such a desire for war that even from the Red Sea he attempted to invade Italy.

But when Roman ambassadors came to him, to examine into his loyalty and pay attention to his secret designs, in order that they might make Hannibal suspected by the king of changing his views by reason of their bribes, and when they had not done that in vain, and Hannibal had found it out and had seen that he was being separated from the (king's) more secret plans, on an occasion presenting itself, he went to the king, and when he had recounted many facts to him concerning his loyalty and hatred for the Romans he added this: "My father, Hamilcar," said he, "when I was a little boy, since I was not more than nine years old, on his departure from Carthage for Spain as commander-in-chief sacrificed victims to Jupiter most high and holy. And while the sacrifice was being accomplished asked me whether I would like to go with him to the camp. When I received the offer gladly and began to beseech him not to hesitate to take me, then said he, 'I will do so, if you give me the pledge I demand'."

Passage No. 8.

[This is an easier passage and we shall not give a literal version of it. You will probably manage quite well without this. It just continues of course the last story.]

"At the same time he led me to the altar, at which he had begun to sacrifice, and when everybody else had been removed, bade me swear holding that, that I would never be friends with the Romans. That oath given to my father I have so kept right up to this time that it ought to be doubtful to no one that I will be of the same mind in the future (in the time that is left). Wherefore if you have any friendly thoughts about the Romans you will not act unwisely if you keep me in the dark; when indeed you are preparing war you will deceive yourself if you do

not make me leader in that." At this age, then, at which we have said (he did so), along with his father he set out for Spain: after whose death, Hasdrubal being chosen commander-in-chief, he took-the-command of all the cavalry; when this man also was slain the army presented the supreme authority to him. That fact being reported at (to) Carthage was approved of in the name of the State. So Hannibal at less than twenty-five years of age became general and within the next three years subdued in war all the races of (in) Spain. He stormed Saguntum, a treaty-state, (and) levied (prepared) three very large armies.

Notes.

Numquam... cum Romanis fore: this is, of course, literally, "that I would never be in friendship with the Romans".

Quare si quid: quid is a pronoun often used with *si*, and meaning "any". Its nominative masculine is *quis;* otherwise it is the same as *qui*, the relative. This, then, is literally, "If anything you will be thinking in a friendly manner about the Romans". *Quid* is thus accusative after cogitabis.

Karthaginem: accusative after a verb of motion; no preposition; *factus... subegit*, literally, "having become subdued". In English we prefer, as in the translation, two finite verbs.

Passage No. 9.

Out of these he sent one into Africa, another with Hasdrubal, his brother, he left in Spain, the third he took with himself into Italy. He crossed the pass of the Pyrenees. Wheresoever he marched he came into conflict with all the inhabitants. He let no one go, unless vanquished. After he came to the Alps, which separate Italy from Gaul, which no one had ever crossed with an army before him, save the Graian Hercules (from which action that is to-day called the Graian Pass), he routed the men of the Alps in attempting to prevent his passage

(keep him from the pass), opened up the country (the places), made roads, and brought it to pass that an elephant with its equipment was able to go by that way by which, before that, one unarmed man was scarcely able to crawl. By this way he led his forces across and came into Italy. He had engaged-in-battle at the Rhône with Publius Cornelius Scipio, the consul, and had routed him. With this same man at Clastidium, near the Po, he contends (contended, Historical Present), and sends (sent) him thence wounded and routed. A third time the same Scipio, with his colleague Tiberius Longus, came against him at the Trebia. With them he joined battle: and overthrew them both. Thence through Liguria he crossed the Apennines, making-for Etruria. On this march he is (was) affected with so severe a disease in the eyes that he never after that had equally good use of his right eye.

Notes.

[The pass in the Alps is called the Graian Pass. People knew this, and tried to account for the name by inventing the story that Hercules Graius had crossed it and given his name to it.]

Effecit ut: note that this is a Substantival clause after *ut.*

Decernit, dimittit, adficitur: these are all what are called Historic Presents. They ought strictly to be Perfects, but the Present tense is used for pictorial effect; just as if we said, "Behold, now he is fighting at the Po with Scipio and routing him".

Adeo gravi . . . ut: this, of course, is an *ut* Consecutive clause.

Passage No. 10.

Although he was even then oppressed with this sickness and was being carried in a litter, he surrounded and slew Caius Flaminius, the consul at Trasumenus, along with his army, and not long after Caius Centenius, a praetor, who was seizing the defiles with a chosen band (picked force). Hence he came into Apulia. There two consuls met him, Caius Terentius and Lucius Aemilius. He routed

the armies of both (each) in one battle, slew Paulus the consul and several ex-consuls besides, among them Cnaeus Servilius Geminus who had been consul in the preceding year.

After this battle he set out for Rome, with no one offering any resistance. He halted in the mountains near the city. After he had held his camp there for several days and was on his way back to Capua, Quintus Fabius Maximus, the Roman dictator, threw himself in his way in the Falernian territory.

Notes.

Circumventum occidit: two finite verbs in English, in Latin equal to Past Participle Passive and finite verb.

Obviam ei venerunt: literally, "came in the way to him". *Obviam ire* or *venire*, the regular Latin phrase for "to meet".

Consulares: while a Roman held the chief magistracy he was consul. On the expiry of his year of office he became *consularis*, ex-consul.

Habuisset et reverteretur: note the difference in the tenses, the first denoting a completed action, the second one in process of completion—continuous.

Passage No. 11.

Here though shut in by the narrowness of the places (position) he extricated himself by night without any loss to (of) his army, and baffled Fabius, although he was a very clever general. For when night came on (Ablative Absolute) he bound faggots to the horns of his oxen and set them on fire, and let loose far and wide a great multitude of that description. And when the sudden sight presented itself (Ablative Absolute) he caused such panic among the Roman army that no one dared to come outside the rampart. Within not so many days after this achievement, he craftily lured Marcus Minucius Rufus, master of the horse, whose power was equal to the dictator's, into battle

and routed him. Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, consul for the second time, he drew into an ambush while he was away among the Lucanians and slew. He slew Marcus Claudius Marcellus, five times consul, at Venusia in a similar manner. It would be tedious to enumerate all his engagements. Wherefore it will be sufficient to say this only (literally, this one thing will be enough having been said), from which it may be seen how great he was: as long as he was in Italy no one opposed him in battle; no one after the battle of Cannae pitched his camp against him in the open (level) ground (in the plain).

Notes.

Vallum: the Romans made their camps in the form of a square, with a ditch on every side, and behind the ditch a rampart of earth topped by a palisade (*vallum*).

Dictator: in times of difficulty the Romans, who usually were governed by two magistrates called consuls, used to appoint a supreme official called dictator, who had under him, but in this case equal to him, a master of the horse, that is, commander of the cavalry.

Passage No. 12.

Hence, though unsubdued, having been recalled to defend his native land, he waged war against Publius Scipio, son of that Scipio whom he himself, first at the Rhône, a second time at the Po, a third time at the Trebia, had routed. With this man, in the present exhaustion of his country's resources, he desired meanwhile to make peace, that afterwards when stronger he might engage him. He came to a parley: the terms were not agreed on. Within a few days after that action he joined battle with him at Zama. He was routed and, wonderful to relate, within two days and two nights came to Hadrumetum, which is about 300 miles from Zama. During this retreat (flight)

the Numidians, who had left the battle at the same time with him, set an ambuscade for him. These he not only escaped, but crushed the men themselves. At Hadrumetum he gathered the remaining men from their flight (the men left from the rout): within a few days by fresh levies he gathered together many men.

Although he had been very actively engaged in making preparations the Carthaginians ended the war with Rome. He none the less after that was in command of an army and performed exploits in Africa up to (the time of) the consuls Publius Sulpicius and Caius Aurelius.

Passage No. 13.

For during the office of these men Carthaginian ambassadors came to Rome, to return thanks to the senate and Roman people because they had made peace with them, and to give them on account of that a golden crown and at the same time to ask that their hostages might be (kept) at Fregellae and that the prisoners should be restored. To this in accordance with a decree of the senate the reply was made: their gift was pleasing and was accepted; the hostages would be (kept) in the place in which (literally in what place) they were asking, they would not send back the prisoners because (the Carthaginians) were keeping Hannibal, a most bitter enemy to the Roman name, by whose instrumentality the war had been undertaken, even now in supreme authority over their army and likewise his brother Mago. On hearing of this reply the Carthaginians called Hannibal and Mago home. When he returned hither, he was appointed king (supreme magistrate) in the twenty-second year after he had been praetor. For as there were consuls at Rome, so at Carthage, each year two kings keeping-office-for-a-year (*annui*) used to be appointed. In

that office Hannibal showed the same diligence he had shown in war (literally showed himself of equal diligence as he had been in war: *pari diligentia*, Ablative of Description).

Notes.

His magistratibus: This is Ablative Absolute, "These being magistrates".

Donarent, literally, "to gift them with a crown". *Donarent* and *peterent* are also final Subjunctives after *qui*.

Ut redderentur: Substantival clause after *peterent*.

Futuros, remissuros: Don't be misled by the omission of *esse* after these words. This is very common in accusative and Infinitive constructions.

Rex . . . praetor: Nepos is here using the term *rex*, strictly "king," for the name of the two supreme magistrates at Carthage. *Praetor* was the name of a magistrate at Rome of less rank than a consul, who was the chief magistrate. Again *Nepos* is using it for the corresponding magistrate at Carthage. The Carthaginians had of course different names for their magistrates, and quite a different constitution from that at Rome. The name of their chief magistrate was Suffete.

Passage No. 14.

For he brought it to pass by means of fresh taxes, not only that there was money to be paid to the Romans in accordance with the treaty, but also money over, to be put back (*or* laid past) in the treasury. Then one year after, when Marcus Claudius and Lucius Furius were consuls, ambassadors came from Rome to Carthage. Hannibal thinking these had been sent for the purpose of demanding his surrender before they got audience of the senate, embarked on a ship secretly and fled to Syria to Antiochus. On this becoming known, the Carthaginians sent two ships to seize him if they could catch up on him. They confiscated his goods, razed his house to the ground, (and) adjudged him to be an exile. But Hannibal in the third year after his flight, when Lucius Cornelius

and Quintus Minucius were consuls, with five ships, drew near to Africa in the territory of the Cyrenaeans, if perchance (in the hope that) the Carthaginians by hope and confidence in Antiochus might be induced to join the war. He had already persuaded Antiochus to advance with his armies into Italy. Hither he summoned his brother Mago. When the Carthaginians got to know that, they inflicted the same penalty on Mago in his absence as on his brother.

Passage No. 15.

When they, despairing of their fortunes, had weighed anchor and set sail (literally released the ships and given the sails to the winds), Hannibal made his way to Antiochus. Concerning the fate of Mago two tales are told (a twofold memory has been handed down): (for) some have left it written that he perished by shipwreck, others by-the-hands-of his own slaves. Antiochus, however, if he had given the same obedience to Hannibal's (his) counsels in waging war as he had begun to do in undertaking it, would have contended for the Empire of the world nearer Tiber than Thermopylæ. And although he (Hannibal) saw him making many foolish attempts, yet on no occasion did he desert him. He was in command of a few ships, which he had been ordered to take from Syria into Asia, and with them he engaged-in-battle against a fleet of Rhodians in the Pamphylian Sea. And although his own men were being overcome by the number of their opponents, he himself, in the wing on which he acted, was victorious. On the rout of Antiochus, fearing lest he should be given up (to the Romans), which doubtless would have happened had he placed himself in his power (if he had made power of himself), he came to the Gortynii in Crete, to consider

there whither to betake himself. Now being the most cunning of all men he saw he would be in great danger unless he should have taken some precaution on account of the greed of the Cretans. For he was carrying with him a great amount of money concerning which he knew a report had gone abroad. Accordingly he takes (took, adopted: Historical Present) a plan of this sort.

Passage No. 16.

He fills several jars with lead, (and) covers the tops with silver and gold. These in the presence of the chiefs he places in the temple of Diana, pretending to trust his fortunes to their good faith. The chiefs being deceived he fills the brazen statues which he was carrying with him, with all his money, and casts them forth in the open space before (of) his house. The Gortynii guard the temple with great care, not so much from others as from Hannibal, to prevent him lifting (his property) and taking (it) away with him without their knowledge. So the Carthaginian, having secured his possessions and tricked all the Cretans, came to Prusias in Pontus. With him he preserved the same sentiments towards Italy (he was of the same mind), nor did he do anything else save arm the king and stir him up against the Romans. And since he saw that this prince was not strong enough in the resources of his own kingdom (was too little strong in home resources) he won over to his side all the other princes, and formed alliances with the most warlike races. The Pergamene king, Eumenes, a very great friend of the Romans, kept aloof from him, and war was waged between them both by land and sea. Therefore Hannibal was the more eager for his overthrow. (By which Hannibal was more desirous for him to be overwhelmed).

Passage No. 17.

But both on land and sea Eumenes was stronger by reason of his alliance with Rome. Hannibal thought if he had removed him, all that was left (all other things) would be easier for himself. For slaying this man he entered on the following plan. In a few days there was likely to be a naval battle (they were about to contend with the fleet). He was at a disadvantage in the number of his ships. He must fight with cunning since he was not equal in arms. He ordered as many poisonous serpents as possible to be gathered alive and to be put into earthenware vessels. When he had got together a great number of these, on the very day on which he intended to fight the naval battle, he calls together the sailors and enjoins on them to make their attack on the ship of Eumenes the king alone (*unam*), (and) to consider it sufficient merely to defend themselves from the rest. They would easily attain that end by the great number of the serpents. He would see, he said, that they knew in what ship the king was sailing. If they either took or slew him, he promised they would be rewarded largely. The soldiers having been thus exhorted, the fleet was led into battle by both parties. On their line of battle being arranged, before the signal for fight was given, Hannibal, to disclose to his men the position of Eumenes, sends a messenger in a small-boat with a herald's staff.

Passage No. 18.

When he came to the enemy's ships, and showing the letter, asserted that he was seeking the king, he was at once conducted to Eumenes, because no one doubted but that he had some message about peace (something had been written concerning peace). The letter-bearer,

having shown the general's ship to his own men, betook himself to the same place whence he had come. But Eumenes, on opening the letter found nothing in it save mocking remarks (what pertained to making a fool of him), and although he marvelled what the cause of this might be without finding (nor did he find), yet he did not hesitate to join battle forthwith. In this attack (attack of these men) the Bithynians, by reason of Hannibal's injunction, attack the ship of Eumenes in-a-body (*universi*). Since the king could not bear up against the force of these, he seeks safety in flight, which he would not have secured had he not retreated within the lines of his own troops (within his own forces), who had been drawn up on the neighbouring shore. Since the remaining Pergamene ships were pressing their opponents too severely, suddenly the earthenware vessels, of which we have made mention above, began to be hurled upon them.

Passage No. 19.

The discharge of these (which having been thrown) at first roused laughter among the combatants, nor could it be seen why that was being done (nor could the purpose of this be understood). However, after they saw their ships filled with serpents, terrified by the strange circumstance, since they could not see what most especially to avoid, they turned their sterns round and betook themselves to the quarters of the fleet (to their own naval camps). Thus by his wisdom, Hannibal overcame the arms of the Pergamenes; not then only, but on many another occasion on land (with land forces) he routed his opponents with equal skill. While these things were going on in Asia, the ambassadors of Prusias happened to be dining in the house of (*apud*) Titus Quintius Flami-

ninus, an ex-consul at Rome, and there, mention having been made of Hannibal, one of them happened to say that he was in the realm of Prusias. On the next day Flamininus laid that information before the senate. The senators, since they thought that they would never be free from secret plots while Hannibal was alive, sent ambassadors to Bithynia, among them Flamininus, to ask the king not to keep with him their greatest enemy and (but) to surrender him to them. Prusias dared not say no to these: he made the following refusal (saying), let them not ask that to be done by him which was against the rights of hospitality. Let them seize him themselves, if they could: they would easily find out where he was. (Note.—The direct words of Prusias were: "Ask not that to be done by me which is against the rights of hospitality. Seize him yourselves if you can. You will easily find the place where he is." Note the changes on turning it into Oratio Obliqua.)

Passage No. 20.

For Hannibal stayed in one place in a fort which had been given to him by the king as a gift, and had built it in such a way that he had outlets in all parts of the building, fearing doubtless lest that might actually occur which came to pass. When the envoys of the Romans had come hither and had surrounded his house in great numbers (with a crowd), a boy looking forth from the door told Hannibal that an unusual number of armed men were in sight. He ordered him to go round all the doors of the dwelling and bring word quickly to him whether it was beset in the same manner on all sides. When the boy had quickly brought back word what was the state of the case (literally, what was), and had shown that all the outlets were seized, he felt that that had not

been done by chance, but that it was himself they were seeking and that he could no longer live. That he might not lay his life down at the bidding of another, mindful of his former glorious deeds (virtues), he took the poison which he always had been accustomed to have with him. So one of the most valiant of men (literally, a very brave man), after the accomplishment of many and manifold labours, passed away in his seventieth year.

KEY TO THE EXERCISES.

Exercise 1 (*a*).

1. The friendship of the inhabitants of Spain. 2. The inhabitants of Italy. 3. To (*or* with) the inhabitants of Italy (*incolis* being dative or ablative). 4. The boldness (*or* by the boldness) of the sailor (*ferocia* may be nominative, *-a* short, or ablative, *-a* long). 5. The wrath (*or* by the wrath) of the sailors (*ira* may be nominative, *-a* short, or ablative, *-a* long). 6. To (*or* by, with or from) the islands of Italy (*insulis* may be either dative or ablative). 7. The islands of Spain (*insulas* is accusative case). 8. The victory (*or* by the victory) of the sailors of the islands (*victoria* may be nominative or ablative).

Exercise 1 (*b*).

1. Amicitia Italiae nautarum. 2. Incolae Hispaniae. 3. Italiae incolarum. 4. Irā nautae. 5. Victoriā poetarum. 6. Insulis. 7. Nautis Hispaniae et Italiae.

Remember in Latin prose the quantity of the *-a* in the ablative singular (that is, whether it is long or short) would not be marked, and only the sense would tell you which case it was.

If you wish a little more practice before going on, take

the Key now and re-translate the sentences, comparing them with the Exercises. This will give facility in recognising the cases.

You should now make sure of the vocabulary: learn it off by heart. No words in it will be repeated in the succeeding vocabularies. If you forget any you must consult the general Vocabulary at the end.

Exercise 2 (*a*).

1. Barca is stirring up the inhabitants of Spain. 2. At first he was seeking (used to seek, was-trying-to seek) the friendship of the inhabitants. 3. Ye often overcame (*or* used-to-overcome) the inhabitants of this land. 4. Italy now ye do not love, nor used you to love it. 5. With the inhabitants of the island you are warring, and you are blazing with boldness and anger. 6. We were fighting in the island (of) Sicily (note the apposition, putting the two nouns in the same case where we use *of* and *genitive*), but the inhabitants refused (were refusing) their friendship. 7. Ye are asking for friendship and are obtaining it. 8. Now we are hoping-for victory; this he denies to you.

Note the different ways of translating the Present and Imperfect tense in Latin:—

Present: He loves, is loving, does love, etc.
Imperfect: He loved, was-loving, used-to-love, tried-to-love.

Note that "you" in English is sometimes singular, sometimes plural. Latin always distinguishes them:—

Amabas: you were loving (singular), strictly *thou.*
Amabatis: you were loving (plural), strictly *ye.*

Exercise 2 (*b*).

1. Hispaniae incolas armat Barca. 2. Primo incolarum amicitiam conciliabat. 3. Hujus incolas terrae saepe su-

perabat. 4. Italiam nunc non amat neque amabat. 5. Cum Italiae incolis bellabat atque ferocia et ira flagrabat. 6. In insula Sicilia pugnabat. 7. Italiae autem incolae Barcam superabant. 8. Tum amicitiam rogabat atque impetrabat. 9. Nunc iram in Italiam renovat. 10. Victoriam, O Barca, speras; hoc tibi negamus.

Again we should advise you to take this translation and re-translate it, comparing it with the Exercises.

Exercise 3 (*a*).

1. The boy used to love a goat. 2. You used to love the goats of the sons of Philip. 3. You were stirring up the horses of Philip. 4. Philip was stirring up the minds of his sons. 5. The horses of Philip (Philip's horses) are in the fields. 6. *His* sons give (*or* are giving) gifts to Philip. 7. We are giving gifts to the sons of Philip (*or* to Philip's sons). 8. Where are the sons of Philip (*or* Philip's sons) with the goats?

Exercise 3 (*b*).

1. Filios Philippi amamus. 2. Filii Philippi equos amabant. 3. Philippus filiis equos dat. 4. Ubi nunc sunt equi Philippi? 5. Sunt in agris. 6. Capri et equi sunt filiorum Philippi. 7. Cum equis et capris et filiis Philippus est in agris.

You will have noticed now that the Latin verb is almost always at the end of the sentence. An emphatic word is sometimes put there instead of it: watch carefully when this occurs. *Est* and *sunt* are rather weak words, and need not be put at the end.

The usual order is nominative, dative, accusative, verb, but of course this may be varied. You might have an adverb before the nominative or a conjunction, and you

might have an adverb between the accusative and its verb. Re-translate this exercise now for further practice.

LESSON IV.

QUESTION. THE PERFECT STEMS ARE *CONCITAV-*, *SUPERAV-*, *BELLAV-*, *FLAGRAV-*, *ARMAV-*, *PUGNAV-*. IN EACH CASE *PRES. STEM + AV.*

Exercise 4 (*a*).

1. Thrice with the Carthaginians did ye wage war, O Romans. 2. At the first we fought in Italy with the Romans. 3. By the aid of the winds you (singular) will conquer the Romans. 4. At last they have overcome (overcame) their opponents. 5. O Carthaginians, ye will no longer hope for victory and ye will refuse to renew the war. 6. We shall ask and obtain the friendship of our opponents. 7. Accordingly thereafter (after that) the Carthaginians won the friendship of the Romans. 8. A Roman fought (*or* has fought) with a Gaul.

Exercise 4 (*b*).

Poeni cum Romanis ter bellaverunt (*or* bellavere). Primo in Sicilia pugnaverunt, atque ventorum auxilio Poeni Romanorum nautas saepe superaverunt. Sed tandem apud Siciliam adversarios superaverunt Romani nautae. Poeni postea non jam victoriam speraverunt atque bellum renovare recusaverunt. Tum adversariorum amicitiam rogaverunt atque impetraverunt. Itaque Poeni et Romani non jam erant adversarii.

Exercise 5 (*a*).

1. The leaves of the dark cypress in my garden are dear to me. 2. The cypress is full-of-shade. 3. The horse of the son of Philip was always very beautiful. 4. Sicily is a large and beautiful island. 5. The cypresses

of Sicily are gloomy (dark) and rough. 6. The Carthaginians were wretched while they were looking at this. 7. Great sorrow seems to be (*or* there seems to be great sorrow) in their hearts (minds). 8. During many years I have fought with the Romans and I shall always fight.

Exercise 5 (*b*).

Cara mihi est cupressus in horto meo. Folia enim sunt umbrosa. Magna et vetusta est, sed semper erat pulchra. Auctumno est pulcherrima. Postea videtur aspera et atra. Tum miser sum ubi specto; magna enim maestitia in animo mihi (*or* meo) videtur esse. Multos annos cupressum meam amavi et semper amabo.

Exercise 6 (*a*).

1. A great number of young men had attacked this place (*or* position). 2. If the young men attack (will have attacked) this place the Romans will renew the war. 3. When we have estranged (shall have estranged) Africa from the Carthaginians we shall attack Spain. 4. After ye have extended your empire ye will preserve it with great stubbornness (*magna pertinacia*, an ablative of manner). 5. We had preserved the Romans when they were in great danger. 6. You (ye) had hesitated to approve of the design of the Carthaginians. 7. After they conquer the Gauls they will extend their empire to Spain (to the Spaniards). 8. They had refused to attack the Romans because they had won their friendship. 9. If I arm the inhabitants of this island they will fight. 10. In this place the Carthaginians had waged-war with the Romans for many years.

Throughout this exercise note carefully the differences in tense in Latin and English. In Sentence 1 note the order *magnus adulescentulorum numerus*, and copy it in

similar phrases. Latin likes to sandwich, as it were, its genitive between the noun that governs it and the adjective with this noun. It sometimes also, if the genitive has an adjective with it, puts the governing noun between them, thus—*magnae vir sapientiae*, a man of great wisdom. Note that genitives in Latin are usually governed by nouns; and when you come across one, look for the noun which governs it. Be on the watch for verbs like *dubito* and *recuso*, which are followed by a Present Infinitive in Latin; the English Infinitive is often not translated by an Infinitive in Latin. A list of these verbs will be given later. In Sentence 7 note that often where we say *to Spain* or some similar phrase, Latin talks of the people rather than of the country, and says *to the Spaniards*, etc.

Exercise 6 (*b*).

1. Magnum Poenorum numerum in hoc loco oppugnaverant. 2. Si hunc locum oppugnaverimus, bellum renovabunt Hispani. 3. Cum Hispaniam a Poenis abalienaveritis, Africam oppugnabitis. 4. Postquam imperium propagaverimus magna pertinacia conservabimus. 5. Romanos conservare dubitaveramus ubi magno in periculo erant. (Note the order *magno in periculo*.) 6. Consilium Barcae comprobare dubitaveram. 7. Postquam Africam superaverimus imperium *ad Hispanos* propagabimus. 8. Romanos oppugnare recusabimus, quod amicitiam conciliaverunt. 9. Ubi Hispanos armavero cum Gallis pugnabo. 10. Hoc in loco, multos (per) annos cum Philippo pugnaveramus.

Exercise 7 (*a*).

1. It is the duty of the Romans to extend the bounds of their empire. 2. Hamilcar, a man of the greatest (utmost) boldness, was ablaze with the desire (lust) for

war. 3. We were pondering in mind to renew the war (*better English*, we were pondering on (thinking of) the renewal of the war). 4. With horses, arms, men and money we shall enrich all Africa. 5. In winter there are dark clouds in the sky. 6. The Romans conquered the fleet of the Carthaginians at the islands. 7. The Roman people surpasses all-other races in valour (*virtute*, Ablative of Respect—of thing in which). 8. It is the duty of a chief (*or* it is incumbent upon a chief) to rule his people (Latin says simply "it is of"). 9. The King of the Britons, a man of great wisdom, often used to fight (was fighting) with the Romans. 10. If they make peace they will preserve their ships.

In sentence 4, note that Latin omits all the conjunctions. If you had put in any you would have required to put in all, thus: *Equis et armis et viris et pecunia.* English only puts in, as a rule, the last conjunction.

Exercise 7 (*b*).

1. Est imperatoris fines imperii conservare. 2. Mente agitabatis pacem renovare. 3. Africam, O Hannibal, equis et pecunia locupletavisti. 4. Auctumno coelum est pulchrum. 5. Romanorum naves Poenos apud insulas oppugnaverunt. 6. Romani, magna populus virtute, ceteras gentes gubernabant. 7. Est principis hostes superare. 8. Pacem conciliare est imperatoris. 9. Non iam navibus cum Romanis bellabimus. 10. Ubi classem Poenorum superaverimus, pacem conciliabimus.

Exercise 8 (*a*).

1. Hamilcar, the son of Hannibal, by surname Barca, with a large fleet sailed to Italy. 2. Both by land and by sea the Romans conquered the Carthaginians. 3.

For it is not in-keeping-with his valour to ask for peace. 4. They were ratifying the alliance with a treaty. 5. The Carthaginians have broken (*or* broke) the treaties. 6. They are bringing (they bring) great gifts to Cæsar *in* Rome. 7. We sailed from Malta to Rome with great difficulty. 8. Man is an animal with forethought (*literally*, is a prudent animal). 9. Of all animals man is the most prudent. 10. The iron from the spear was in his body (*better*, the iron head of the spear was in his body).

In sentence 1 note the order, *magna cum classe*—adjective, preposition, noun.

In sentence 6 note that English says *to Cæsar in Rome*, Latin *to Cæsar to Rome*. Watch this carefully in future sentences. You should be always parsing to yourself in doing these sentences, asking yourself what cases the nouns are in, why the verbs are plural or singular, why they are Perfect or Future tense. Soon this will keep you from making careless mistakes. Thus in the above answer the following

Questions.

1. Why is *cognomine* ablative? 2. Why is *magna classe* ablative? 3. Why are *mari* and *terra* ablative? 4. Why is *virtutis* genitive? 5. Why is *pacem* accusative? 6. Why is *magna difficultate* ablative?

Answers.

1. *Cognomine* means, "by surname," Ablative of Respect. Compare *virtute* in sentence 9, Exercise 8 (*b*). 2. *Magna classe* is ablative after *cum*. 3. *Mari* and *terra* are Ablatives of Place. 4. *Virtutis* is genitive after *est*, meaning "it is of". 5. *Pacem* is accusative because the object of a transitive verb, *rogare*. 6. *Magna difficultate* is an Ablative of Manner: "in a very difficult manner we sailed".

Exercise 8 (*b*).

1. Caius, cognomine Cæsar, magnis cum copiis Melitam navigavit. 2. Et mari et terra classes Romanorum (*or* Romanas) superavimus. 3. Non meae est virtutis pacem conciliare. 4. Pacem foedere confirmavimus. 5. Foedus, O Carthaginienses, violavistis. 6. Ad Cæsarem Romam magnis cum donis navigamus. 7. Roma Londinium est longa navigatio (is a long sailing). 8. Animalia maris sunt maxima. 9. Homo animalia cetera virtute superat. 10. Ferrum hastilis renovabat.

Note *all animals* means *all other animals*, therefore use *ceteri*. Do not forget the extra practice to be got from retranslating these exercises in the Key. You are supposed to be doing this each time.

Exercise 9 (*a*).

1. At Zama, however, Scipio conquered Hannibal. 2. At Syracuse, indeed, Cicero lived (stayed) for one year. 3. Cæsar attacked a large number of the enemy. 4. At Carthage we were pondering on war. 5. Cæsar surpassed (used to surpass) all men in bravery. 6. In Africa there are many large wild beasts. 7. At Athens, the city of the Athenians, there are many beautiful temples. 8. In this way Hannibal won the friendship of a large State. 9. Many men are ablaze with the desire for money. 10. It is not in accordance with my custom to stay long at Cumae.

Questions.

1. Why is *Zamae* genitive singular? 2. Why is *Syracusis* ablative plural? 3. Why is *annum unum* accusative? 4. What ablative is *fortitudine?* 5. Why is *consuetudinis* genitive?

Answers.

1. Because it denotes *place at which*, is the name of a town, and a singular noun of the First Declension. 2. Because it denotes *place at which*, is the name of a town, and is a plural noun. 3. Because it denotes *duration of time*. 4. Ablative of Respect (see last Exercise). 5. Because after *est*, meaning "it is of".

Exercise 9 (*b*).

1. Zamae autem adversarios Romani superaverunt. 2. Multos quidem annos Pompeius Romae habitavit. 3. Prima luce magna hostium multitudo Romanos oppugnavit. 4. Carthagine Poeni bellum mente agitabant. 5. Caesar et Pompeius famae cupiditate ceteros Romanos superaverunt (*or* superabant, *denoting a state, not a single act*). 6. Athenis multae et pulchrae statuae sunt. 7. Hac ratione Hannibal civitatum amicitiam Italiae conciliaverat. 8. Annum unum parva cum natione in Africa bellabamus. 9. Cupiditatem pecuniae virtūtis amore homines superant. 10. Non est meae consuetudinis nationes bellicosas oppugnare.

Exercise 10 (*a*).

1. We indeed put the enemy to flight while they were arming themselves (literally, The enemy indeed arming themselves we put to flight *or* have put to flight). 2. For already he had conquered all his enemies. 3. Then on the next day a huge multitude of the enemy began-to-attack Caesar. 4. For we always value the prudent man at a very great price. 5. Scipio, too, loved (was loving *or* used to love) his wife with a passionate (keen) love. 6. Ye will soon with your fiery steeds attack and rout the Carthaginians. 7. The Romans used-to-value Cato at a

great price, Caesar at a greater. 8. For Hamilcar not only routed the enemy from the walls of Carthage, but also got together (prepared) a huge amount (supply) of money. 9. Then the soldiers were estimating very highly (at a very great price) all the plans of their leader. 10. Caesar gifted (was gifting) huge rewards to his brave soldiers.

Questions.

1. Why is *maximi* genitive? 2. Why is *amore acri* ablative? 3. Why is *acribus equis* ablative? 4. Why is *magni* genitive? 5. Why is *fortibus militibus* dative?

Answers.

1. *Maximi* is Genitive of Price. 2. *Amore acri* is an Ablative of Manner. 3. *Acribus equis* is an Ablative of Manner. It might denote the instrument, the thing by which—" by means of your fiery steeds ". 4. *Magni* again is Genitive of Price. 5. *Fortibus militibus* is the dative after a verb of giving—the Dative of the Recipient.

Exercise 10 (*b*).

1. Romani Poenos fines explorantes oppugnaverunt. 2. Jam enim omnes civitates abalienaverant. 3. Tum magna hominum multitudine hostes Caesarem oppugnaverunt. 4. Fortem autem semper pluris aestimabimus. 5. Uxores quidem amore acri amamus. 6. Acres Carthaginiensium equi mox hostes oppugnabunt et fugabunt. 7. Virtutem magni, pluris etiam pecuniam aestimavistis. 8. Non solum a muris hostes fugabimus sed etiam urbem oppugnabimus. 9. Milites fortis consilia ducis parvi aestimaverunt (*or* aestimabant). 10. Duces praemia magna fortibus militibus donant.

Exercise 11 (*a*).

1. Accordingly the Carthaginians with a large army sailed to Italy to attack the Romans (that they might attack). 2. At daybreak the cavalry put to flight a large band of the Carthaginians. 3. The citizens after that will get ready three armies *that* the enemy may *not* attack the city. 4. Meanwhile he was stirring up the Gauls to seize (that they might seize) the defile by night. 5. With all races the Romans waged (*secondary time*) (have waged, *primary time*) war; *or* The Romans waged war with the world. 6. The horns of the goats are very large and strong. 7. Hannibal and his officers on the next day dined at home. 8. In the third month therefore we shall sail to Rome from home. 9. Accordingly he armed himself to preserve his house. 10. For you (*plural*) had approved of this plan that ye might avoid a disaster.

Questions.

1. Why is *oppugnarent* Subjunctive? 2. What does *ne* mean? 3. Why is *oppugnent* Present Subjunctive? 4. Why is *tertio mense* ablative?

Answers.

1. It is the Subjunctive denoting *purpose* after *ut*. 2. *Ne* means "that...not". 3. It is Present tense because *comparabunt* is a primary tense. 4. It denotes point of time, time at which—"in the third month".

Exercise 11 (*b*).

1. Itaque Cæsar magno cum (*or omit* cum) exercitu ad Britanniam navigavit ut hostes oppugnaret. 2. Prima luce equitatu hostium manum fugavimus. 3. Magistratus postea exercitum comparaverunt ne hostes urbem oppugnarent. 4. Hostes Gallos concitant ut saltum noctu

occupent. 5. Exercitibus Romani gentes omnes superaverunt. 6. Cornibus capri inimicos oppugnant. 7. Postero die magistratus domi cenaverunt. 8. Caius enim Roma tertio mense navigaverat. 9. Itaque sese armant ut domos conservent. 10. Hoc consilium comprobavimus ut casum vitaremus.

Exercise 12 (*a*).

1. Then great were your hopes, sad your thoughts (*literally*, you were hoping great things, thinking sad things). 2. Good men and good women love virtue, wisdom and good faith. 3. Accordingly when I had overcome the first line, I attacked the second. 4. To-day without a doubt they will rout the line of battle of the enemy. 5. Since therefore the Romans were standing in line of battle we hesitated to fight. 6. When (since) the Gauls had conquered the Roman legions the city of Rome (*Latin*, the city Rome) was in great peril. 7. For we have sailed (*or* we sailed) to Rome with the greatest hope. 8. When he had made many prayers to the gods, he armed his men (*literally*, when he had prayed the gods many things). 9. Cæsar on the contrary refused to take thought on these matters. 10. Hannibal, on the other hand, with the greatest good faith was preserving the peace.

Note in sentence 2 the omission of all the conjunctions in Latin. You could have inserted them all—*virtutem et sapientiam et fidem.*

In sentence 6 note the apposition *urbs Roma.* Latin never says *urbs Romae.*

Questions.

1. What sort of ablative is *summa spe?* 2. What sort of ablative is *summa fide?* 3. Why is *starent* (sentence 5) Subjunctive?

Answers.

1. *Summa spe* is an Ablative of Manner. 2. *Summa fide* is an Ablative of Manner. 3. *Starent* is Subjunctive after *cum* meaning *since.*

Exercise 12 (*b*).

1. Tum magna sperabat, cogitabat maesta. 2. Itaque cum aciem primam fugavisset, secundam oppugnavit. 3. Hodie enim haud dubie hostium aciem fugabimus. 4. Hostes in acie stabant. 5. Respublica autem magno in periculo erat cum legiones Galli fugavissent. 6. Legiones enim Romanas summa spe oppugnaverant. 7. Cum deos multa oravissent proelium renovaverunt. 8. Multa cogitabat ubi aciem Romanam spectabat. 9. Summa enim fide pacem Hannibal conciliaverat. 10. Romani e contrario de his rebus et his periculis considerare recusaverunt (*recusabant*, were refusing).

Be sure you are careful never to put words like *enim* and *autem* first in the sentence.

Exercise 13 (*a*).

1. When however Hannibal seizes (shall have seized) that city, we shall surrender. 2. He had sailed to Rome to sacrifice a victim to Jupiter most high and holy (Jupiter best, greatest). 3. After the seizure of the city ye will explore the territory. 4. That deed at first stirred up laughter in the spectators (was stirring up laughter for those looking). 5. Then (Next) they will attack the army stationed on the shore. 6. Being about-to-attack those bands of the enemy, he has prepared large forces. 7. The Romans had suddenly routed the enemy when on-the-point-of-making a secret attack on the camp (*literally*, about-to-attack the camp secretly). 8. We had sailed to Africa that we might recover the estranged towns. 9.

They are about-to-behold that conquered army. 10. How many out of those large armies were about to behold their country (fatherland) again.

Questions.

1. What is *immolatum?* 2. What case is *spectantibus?* 3. Parse *oppugnaturos*, that is, tell its case, number, gender and the noun it goes with. 4. Why is *recuperaremus* Subjunctive?

Answers.

1. *Immolatum* is the Supine used to express purpose after a verb of motion. 2. *Spectantibus* is dative plural. Note we say "those spectating," Latin says simply *spectantes.* Never put *is* or any part of it with Present Participle. 3. It is accusative plural masculine going with *hostes.* 4. It is Imperfect Subjunctive denoting purpose after *ut*, that is, *Final Subjunctive.*

Exercise 13 (*b*).

1. Sed cum eas gentes Romani superaverint manus dabunt. 2. Jovi optimo maximo hostias immolatum ad eam insulam noctu navigavit. 3. Post occupatum saltum agros exploraverunt. 4. Ea facta initio risum pugnantibus concitaverunt. 5. Deinde legiones in litore collocatas fugavit. 6. Itaque Romam oppugnaturus magnum exercitum comparavit. 7. Hostes castra clam oppugnaturos subito fugavit. 8. Navigavimus enim ad Africam ut urbes abalienatas recuperemus. 9. Ubi sunt copiae superatae? Pacem rogaturi sunt. 10. Quot ex eo exercitu magno patriam rursus spectaturi sunt.

Exercise 14 (*a*).

1. We have and always shall have a great supply of money. 2. Now they are conquering and always shall

conquer all races. 3. I shall lead a large army into Spain. 4. They will see and conquer the Romans on the third day. 5. Before his arrival they were carrying on things (affairs) badly by land and sea. 6. When Hamilcar is waging war he never conquers the enemy. 7. But at the last they come almost to despair (*or* they are almost reduced to despair). 8. He holds the strongest towns of Africa beneath his sway (within his power). 9. But Hamilcar with favourable fortune (*that is*, with the help of fortune) carries out great exploits (things). 10. The undying hatred of Hamilcar for the Romans will stir up the second Punic war.

Exercise 14 (*b*).

1. Multos per annos cum Romanis bellum gerebamus. 2. Tertio die hostium aciem videbimus. 3. Omnes gentes vincent et imperio suo tenebunt. 4. Copias magnas in Romanos ducitis. 5. Ante Romanorum adventum et mari et terra bellum male gerebamus. 6. Ubi bellum gerebamus semper hostes vincebamus. 7. Sed tandem prope ad desperationem pervenimus (*perveniebamus* would mean "we were coming"). 8. Romam, ad urbem Italiae valentissimam veniebant. 9. Magnas res secunda fortuna geremus. 10. Hannibal perpetuo odio erga Romanos exercitum in Italiam ducit.

Exercise 15 (*a*).

1. Hamilcar thinks himself to be about to make an end of this war (*better English*, Hamilcar thinks he will make an end of this war). 2. This man thinks that man to be making an end of these wars (*better*, This man thinks that man is making an end of these wars). 3. This woman thinks that man to have done this (*better*, This woman thinks that man has done this). 4. If he

refuses (shall have refused) to make an end of this war we shall retire from Sicily. 5. We shall come to Africa to slay this man and to destroy Carthage (note the Supine after verb of motion). 6. The Vettones slew him while fighting in battle. 7. The bystanders will say this is a brave man. 8. They say they will retire from Sicily at dawn. 9. On-the-point-of-departing from Sicily, ye are making peace with this king. 10. To-morrow they will come to Rome.

Note that in sentence 2 *eum* denotes a different person from *hic*, and that in sentence 4 *se* denotes the same person as *hic*. Always be on the look-out for this distinction.

Exercise 15 (*b*).

1. Dicit hunc hujus belli finem facturum esse. 2. Dicit hos hujus belli finem facere. 3. Hi eos dicunt horum bellorum finem fecisse. 4. Si Catulus negaverit hoc bellum se compositurum esse Sicilia decedemus. 5. Hic bellum compositum et Carthaginem deletum ad Africam venit. 6. Vettones eum in proelio pugnantem interficient. 7. Adstantes dicunt hanc esse fortem. 8. Dicit se Roma cras decessurum esse. 9. Decessurus Sicilia pacem cum Catulo conciliavit. 10. Prima luce Romam adveniemus.

Exercise 16 (*a*).

1. We ourselves have said they will not make an end of the war (*or*, We ourselves said they would not make an end of the war. The actual words were, "We shall not make an end of the war"). 2. Hannibal himself had said he alone had made an end of this war. (The actual words of Hannibal were, "I alone have made an end of this war".) 3. If you say they will make an end of the war, they will sail to Carthage at daybreak. 4. You

yourselves thought these had returned home with great disgrace. (The thought in the mind was, "These have returned home with great disgrace".) 5. Those who come to Corinth look at the statues. 6. They themselves said that they alone had removed the enemy from the walls of Carthage. (The actual words were, "We alone have removed the enemy from the walls of Carthage".) 7. Neither had said that he was slaying the captives. (The actual words of which you deny the saying were, "He is slaying the captives".) 8. The one thought they were saying these things; the other denied it. (Note *alter* . . . *alter*, the one . . . the other (of two). The actual thought was, "They are saying these things".) 9. You had seen him whom Catulus defeated at the Ægates islands. 10. Which of the two said Cæsar had given provinces to them only? (The actual words were, "Cæsar gave or has given provinces to them only".)

Remember the parsing of the words in each sentence. Do not pass on till you have satisfied yourself as to the case of the nouns, number and tense of the verbs, and so on.

Exercise 16 (*b*).

1. Catulus ipse negaverat se bellum compositurum esse (said . . . not = deny. The actual words were, "I shall not end the war"). 2. Catulus solus dixerat se ipsum bellum composuisse. (The actual words were, "I myself ended *or* have ended the war".) 3. Si Catulus dixerit se bellum compositurum esse Romam statim navigabimus. 4. Ipsi putaveramus eos solos magno cum dedecore domum redituros esse. (The thought was, "They are about-to-return".) 5. Qui Romam veniunt [ii], aedificia pulchra inspiciunt. 6. Hannibal ipse dixit se solum hostes a muris Carthaginis removisse. (The actual words were,

"I alone removed *or* have removed the enemy from the walls".) 7. Uter dixit Romanos captivos interficere. 8. Alter dixit haec ita esse; alter negavit. 9. Eum videramus qui urbes Africae (*or* in Africa) valentissimas patriae restituerat. (Note "the man who" always *eum qui*: avoid *hominem qui* in such a phrase.) 10. Neuter dixit Cæsarem hanc provinciam sibi soli dedisse. (*Sibi* is used because it refers to the subject of *dixit*, the main verb. The actual words were, "Cæsar gave this province to me alone".)

Exercise 17 (*a*).

1. We are attacking Rome with such (so great) boldness that ye have no hope of safety. 2. He had defended Eryx so boldly that Marcellus said (was saying) he (Marcellus) would never take it. 3. Ye are defending that city of yours in such a way that we have no hope of victory. 4. So bold were they that they were saying they would not hand over the city. 5. So badly are the Carthaginians waging war that they are losing the towns of all Africa. 6. The bravery of that race was so great that they always used-to-conquer their opponents. 7. So wise was he that he perceived (was perceiving) these things were false. 8. So serious (so great) an internal war has blazed out in Africa that ye are now losing, O Carthaginians, all your towns. 9. Neither is so bold as to fight with him (that man); *literally*, Neither is so bold that he may fight with him. 10. We said that now at last they had lost the empire of all Africa.

Questions.

1. In sentence 2 what does *eum* refer to? 2. In sentence 4 whom does *se* refer to? 3. In sentence 7 what is the case of *haec?* 4. What were the actual words in sentence 10?

Answers.

1. *Eum* refers to *Erycem.* 2. *Se* refers to the subject of *erant.* 3. *Haec* is accusative, subject of the Infinitive *esse.* 4. "Now at last they have lost."

Exercise 17 (*b*).

1. Ille Erycem ita ferociter (tanta ferocia) defendebat ut Romani nullam victoriae spem haberent. 2. Ille Erycem tanta fortitudine defendit ut Romani non putent se eum capturos esse. 3. Urbem tuam sic defendebat ut Romani nullam victoriae spem haberent. 4. Tam ferox erat (not *fuit,* because "was" denotes a state) ut negaret se urbem illam traditurum esse. 5. Romani ita male bellum gerebant ut omnia oppida amitterent. 6. Illius fortitudo viri tanta erat ut omnes adversarios vinceret. 7. Adeo sapiens est ut intellegat haec esse falsa. 8. Tantum bellum exarsit ut Poeni oppida Africae amitterent. 9. Uter tam ferox est ut cum illo pugnet? 10. Dixit se ipsos imperium totius Africae amisisse.

In sentence 10 *eos* or *illos* might be used for *se* if you meant that *they* did not include *He.*

Exercise 18 (*a*).

1. At that time so greatly were we afraid that we sought help from the Romans and obtained it. 2. When the Carthaginians had lost everything in Sicily they made peace. 3. They were defending Eryx with so great bravery that the Romans despaired of victory. 4. When (since), O Romans, you had resolved to make an end of the war you entrusted the business to Regulus. 5. He was so fired with the desire for war (for making war) that he refused to leave Sicily (to depart from Sicily). 6. Some were ablaze with zeal for fighting (with zeal of fighting), others for retreating (retiring). 7. Since (when) they

knew these things useless for living well (for a good life) they cast them away. (There is an *esse* understood after *inutilia.*) 8. So many mercenaries have revolted that the Carthaginians are in despair. 9. You (plural) are entrusting to others the eagerness (desire) for warring (war). 10. By sparing the lives of others ye will win love and friendship.

(Note Latin says "by sparing the life"; *vita* is never used in the plural in this sense.)

Exercise 18 (*b*).

1. Poeni adeo timebant ut a Romanis auxilium etiam petiverint atque impetraverint. 2. Cum, O Carthaginienses, omnia in Sicilia amisissetis pacem conciliavistis. 3. Tam ferociter (Tanta fortitudine) Erycem defendistis ut decesserimus. 4. Cum belli finem facere constituissent rem Hamilcari permiserunt. 5. Adeo bellandi studio flagrabat ut Sicilia decedere recusaverit. 6. Alii regendi studio flagrabant, alii cupiditate pecuniae. 7. Cum haec ad pugnandum inutilia cognovisset perdidit. 8. Tot mercenarii milites desciverant ut Poeni desperarent. 9. Aliis bellandi studium permittamus. 10. Parcendo aliorum bonis amorem conciliabimus.

Exercise 19 (*a*).

1. When (since) we were in Sicily he departed from the city. 2. They were a long time at Athens for the purpose of seeing the statues. 3. When Cæsar is at Rome he will preserve the laws (the future *erit* is used because the principal verb is future). 4. Then they were making haste that they might be at Rome on that day. 5. He, while fighting, was slain by a Gaul of huge frame. 6. Those captives after the battle of Cannae had been slain by Hannibal. 7. Then indeed we shall retire from Greece,

when we have been conquered (shall have been conquered) by the Romans. 8. If the Carthaginians are conquered in this battle, they will be in great danger (note the tense, shall have been conquered). 9. After subduing the most warlike nations he was slain on a journey by a slave (*literally*, after the most warlike nations having been subdued). 10. The woman was betrayed by a slave to whom she had given many gifts.

Exercise 19 (*b*).

1. Nunc quidem in Sicilia sunt multi Carthaginienses. 2. Diu Romae eramus. 3. Si Romae ero, te visum veniam. 4. Cum Romae eris (-tis) Capitolium videbis (-tis) (spectabis, -tis). 5. Festinat ut Romae illo die sit. 6. Cassius post pugnam a servo pugione interfectus est (occisus est). 7. Antonius a Cleopatra amatus erat. 8. Cum a Romanis victi erunt, Sicilia profecto decedent. 9. Si hoc proelio a Scipione victi erimus magno in periculo profecto erimus. 10. Cum mercenarii milites descivissent Carthago magno in periculo erat.

Exercise 20 (*a*).

1. We so defended Eryx that the war seemed not to have been waged in that place (*esse* could have been omitted). 2. So great wars then blazed forth that these cities were almost being destroyed. 3. When a hundred thousand of mercenaries had been formed (made) he removed them from the walls of Carthage. 4. That city was being besieged by a very large number of barbarians. 5. So bravely did they fight that the enemy were being driven out. 6. Shut in by the narrowness of the place (places) the women were being slain (were perishing) from hunger and disease. 7. Hannibal was at Rome, not the Romans at Carthage. 8. Before the siege of the

city by the Spaniards a great number of the Carthaginians were slain. 9. They had been wise, brave and warlike, sufficiently skilled in all things. 10. By those woes the women were so terrified that they sought help.

Note, *eo loco* in sentence 1 is an Ablative of Place. You could insert the preposition *in* if you pleased.

Note the ablatives in sentence 6, all Ablatives of Means or Instrument—thing by which.

In sentence 9 note the absence of all the conjunctions. You might have inserted them *all*.

Exercise 20 (*b*).

1. Sic Erycem defendit ut eo loco finem belli fecerit. 2. Tantum bellum exarserat ut Carthago nunquam simili in periculo fuerit. 3. Cum centum milia armatorum facta essent, hostes oppugnare constituit. 4. Magno hostium numero Italia vexabatur. 5. Tam ferociter pugnaverunt ut urbs conservaretur (*or* conservata sit). 6. Locorum angustiis clausi plures fame interfecti sunt quam ferro. 7. Vos Romae fuistis, nos non in Graecia fuimus. 8. Ante urbem ab hostibus captam magnus eorum numerus interfectus est. 9. Multos annos Corinthi fueram causa statuas videndi (spectandi). 10. Adeo his malis perterriti sunt (timebant, timuerunt) ut manus dederint.

Exercise 21.

1. Res in Sicilia et mari et terra male geruntur. 2. Nullus nocendi locus hostibus dabitur. 3. E contrario, occasione data, hostes lacessentur. 4. Res in Sicilia bene gerebantur. 5. Paene omnia in Sicilia amissa erant sed Eryx fortiter defendebatur. 6. Bellum eo loco nobis gerendum est (*gerendum* is gerundive. Note the absence of the preposition *in* with *eo loco*. Remember *nobis* is Dative). 7. Ab hominibus amicis non nocendum est

(*nocendum* is gerund). 8. Haec res arbitrio Hannibalis permittenda est. 9. A Sicilia nobis intra paucos dies discedendum est. (Note preposition, *intra*, within, takes Accusative case.) 10. A Romanis nunquam hostibus cedendum est. 11. Eryx Carthaginiensibus (Poenis) defendendus est. 12. Si res in Sicilia male gerentur ea insula decedemus. (*Gerentur* is Future, not Future Perfect, because the meaning is, "If affairs shall be going on badly," not "shall have gone".) 13. Ubi superati erimus hoc loco decedemus (discedemus). 14. Statuemus hujus belli finem facere. 15. Si classis nostra a Romanorum consule superata erit pacem conciliabimus.

Exercise 22.

1. Ego bellandi (belli) cupiditate flagrabam, tu paci serviendum esse putabas. 2. Nobis haec dona dedit, illa vobis (tibi). 3. Omnium nostrum sapientissimus (es) tu, ego fortissimus. 4. Victi nobis manus dederunt. 5. Patria mea belli calamitatibus exhausta mihi carissima est. 6. Ille te sapientior est. 7. Ad sapientissimum Romanorum haec dona mittit. 8. Bellandi (belli) cupiditate acriore quam tu ego flagrabam. 9. Hoc opus omnium facillimum est, illud difficillimum. 10. Patris simillimus est; frater (ejus) matris est similior. 11. Potius, patria succumbente, peribo. 12. Dixit se maximo cum flagitio domum rediturum. 13. Si paullum res erunt refectae, bellum in Romanos renovabo. 14. Postea hoc consilio pacem conciliaveramus. 15. Relictis armis ille cum suis Sicilia decessit (*or* decesserunt).

Note in 12 the omission of *esse*. It might be inserted.

Exercise 23.

1. Ab eis petebat ut haec facerent (*Substantival*). 2. Ab eis petii (petivi) ut haec faciant (*Substantival*). 3.

Id egerunt (egere) ut exercitum in Hispaniam mitterent (*Substantival*). 4. Id efficiemus ut duces in Hispaniam mittamur (*Substantival*). 5. Patriam multo aliter se habentem ac sperabamus cognovimus. 6. Mercenarios milites coegit ut eis in Romanos uteretur (*Final*). 7. Carthaginem ipsam oppugnavimus ut tota Africa abalienetur (*Final*). 8. Eos eo compellet ut plures fame quam ferro interituri sint (*Consecutive*). 9. Senatus decrevit ut Carthago oppugnaretur et deleretur (*Substantival*). 10. Senatus decernit ut Carthago oppugnetur et deleatur (*Substantival*). 11. Senatus decernet ut Carthago deleatur (*Substantival*). 12. Carthaginem oppugnavit ut eam deleret (*Final*). 13. Ab eo petivit ne se Romam mitteret (*Substantival*) (*se* referring to the subject of *petivit*. If not, *eum* or *illum*). 14. Militibus imperavit ut hostes a muris removerent (*Substantival*). 15. Militibus imperavit ut Italia statim decedant (*Substantival*).

Exercise 24.

1. Catulus Carthaginiensibus (Poenis) imperavit ut Sicilia decederent. 2. Oppidis abalienatis subvenit. 3. Hannibali exercitus imperium invidebam. 4. Princeps largitione Carthaginiensibus multa profuit. 5. Valentissima totius Africae oppida patriae restituamus. 6. Nunquam Hannibali atque Carthaginiensibus serviemus. 7. Negavit se unquam Romanis serviturum esse. 8. Tantum otium in Africa (Africae) reddidit ille ut nullum bellum multis annis fuisse videatur. 9. Missus est in Hispaniam cum exercitu quo facilius causam bellandi reperiret. 10. Tecum filium novem annorum ducis. 11. Hujus viri mentionem fecit quod multa et magna gessit. 12. Terra marique hostibus resistamus. 13. Hannibal Romanis bellum perpetuum minatur. 14. In Hispaniam

cum exercitu venit quo melius haec perageret. 15. Cum haec ex sententia peregisset domum profectus est.

Exercise 25.

1. Si res refectae essent bellum renovavisset. 2. Si eos virtute vicisset, manus dedissent. 3. Si Catulus se negavisset bellum compositurum, Sicilia Romani decessissent. 4. Si res reficiantur, bellum renovet. 5. Si eos virtute vicerit, manus dabunt. 6. Si eos virtute vincat manus dent. 7. Si Catulus se neget bellum esse compositurum Sicilia decedant. 8. Si Catulus negaverit se bellum compositurum Sicilia decedent. 9. Secundum bellum Poenicum perpetuo hujus odio erga Romanos maxime concitatum esse videtur. 10. Magnas res gerite, gentes bellicosissimas subigite, Africam viris et pecunia locupletate. 11. Dixit Africam equis et viris locupletatum iri. 12. Dixit se meditari bellum in Italiam inferre. 13. Dicit Africam viris pecuniaque locupletari. 14. Nono anno postquam in Hispaniam venerunt occisi sunt. 15. Inimicos vestros amatote.

Note *vestros* not *tuos*, because the *your* is plural.

Exercise 26.

1. Romanos vincere (superare) poterimus. 2. Omnes gentes vincere (superare) poterant. 3. Omnes gentes virtute antecedere poteratis. 4. Inimicum tuum non potes interficere (occidere). 5. Unius virtutem devincere potueramus (*de*vincere = *utterly subdue*). 6. Odium tuum erga Romanos deponere potueris. 7. Dicit se inimicos interficere posse. 8. Dicit se gentes cunctas (omnes) virtute antecedere posse. 9. Dicit Hannibalem omnes (*or* ceteros = *all other*) imperatores prudentia antecedere potuisse. 10. Si Hannibal hic nunc esset Italiam superaret. 11. Si Hannibal in eo proelio esset (*or* fuisset,

state or act) hostes vicisset. 12. Nisi Hannibal omnes imperatores (*or* duces) prudentia antecessisset (antecederet, *had been surpassing*) non esset (*or* fuisset) omnium maximus dux. 13. Si hoc faceremus poenas gravissimas dedissemus. 14. Si hoc fecisses (fecissetis) poenas gravissimas dares (daretis). 15. Si sapiens esset non illud faceret (a state and a continuous action in the past, hence Imperfect).

Exercise 27.

1. Non dubium est quin redeat. 2. Non dubium erat quin rediret (note the Imperfect in secondary time). 3. Non fieri potest quin abeat. 4. Non fieri poterat quin abires (note the Imperfect again). 5. Nemo erat quin (putaret, crederet, existimaret) hostes abire. 6. Nemo est quin nunc urbem ineat. 7. Si Romam adibat errabat. 8. Si domum init stultus est. 9. Ego Romam ibo si Carthaginem ibit ille. (Insert pronouns because they are emphatic, signifying contrast.) 10. Si hoc facit nil boni inest (*insum, inesse,* to be in). 11. Illum tanta cupiditate bellandi incenderunt ut in Italiam (Italiae) arma inferre conatus sit. 12. Dixerunt Hannibalem alia atque antea sentire. 13. Puerulo me Hannibal ad Hispaniam Carthagine profectus est. 14. Ei persuasi ne dubitaret me secum ducere (*or* ne dubitaret quominus me secum duceret). 15. Hoc (*or* ita) faciam si mihi fidem quam postulo dederis.

Exercise 28.

1. Ab eo petunt (quaerunt) num ad se libros laturus sit. 2. Ab eo quaerunt pecuniamne magnam secum ferat. 3. Ab eo quaerunt num secum pecuniam magnam tulerit. 4. Ab eis quaesivimus num quid pecuniae secum tulissent. 5. Ab eis quaesivimus num quid pecuniae secum ferrent.

6. Ab eis quaesivimus pecuniamne magnam secum laturi essent (note the *cum* after *se;* so with *me*, *te*, *vobis*, etc.). 7. Si equitatum omnem tecum duxeris vinces. 8. A me quaesivit num secum ad castra ire vellem (see Passage No. 7: "would go" here means "I was willing to go"). 9. Hamilcar ab Hannibale quaerit velitne ad castra secum ire (*or* num ad castra iturus sit. The first sentence asks if Hannibal is willing, the second asks if he is about to go). 10. Captivos jurare jusserunt eos non in amicitia cum Romanis permansuros esse. 11. Abiit equitatum ductum (Supine after verb of motion). 12. Ab eo quaesivimus quando Romam rediturus esset. 13. Nescio quos libros secum ab Italia ferat. 14. Milites nesciebant num id publice comprobaretur. 15. Proximo triennio omnes Hispaniae gentes subegerunt Carthaginienses (*proximus* is an irregular superlative, whose comparative is *propior*, nearer. There is no positive adjective. See Lesson XXXIV.).

Exercise 29.

1. Tandem Pyrenaeum saltum transire inceperunt. 2. Unum ex his exercitibus in Africam mittere malebat (*ex* and ablative is more common than the genitive after an adjective of number). 3. Hannibal effecit ut elephantus ornatus ea transire possit (*ut* consecutive). 4. Apud flumen Padum cum P. Cornelio Scipione manum conserere conatus est (*manum conserere*, to knit the hands together as in wrestling). 5. Alterum exercitum in Hispania linquere debent, alterum in Italiam ducere. 6. Alterum exercitum in Hispaniam debebant ducere, alterum in Italiam mittere. 7. Scimus loca patefacere, itinera munire (you can omit the conjunction *et* if you please). 8. Hannibal Alpes saltu Graio transiisse videtur. 9. Alpicos transitu prohibere conantes Hannibal profligavisse dicitur. 10.

Hoc itinere adeo gravi morbo adfecti sunt ut dimidium exercitus interierit (*may have perished*). 11. Nesciunt utrum Hannibal Etruriam petierit necne. 12. Non possum dicere utrum Hannibal hoc velit necne. 13. Quaesivit num nollet in Hispaniam ire atque Carthagine manere mallet. 14. Ab eis quaeremus quando hoc facere malint. 15. Nobis dixisti (*or* dixistis) quae hostes voluerint.

Exercise 30.

1. In propinquis urbi montibus causa castra ibi habendi moratus est (*avoid* castrorum habendorum). 2. Romam hoc proelium pugnandi causa profectus est (*better*, causa hujus proelii pugnandi, *or* ad hoc proelium pugnandum, *Gerundive*). 3. Caium Centenium praetorem praemittere voluit ad saltum occupandum (*or* causa saltum occupandi, *or* causa saltus occupandi). 4. Magnam gloriam sibi comparavit hostes uno proelio fugando (*or* hostibus uno proelio fugandis—*not so good*). 5. Decemviros legibus scribendis creare maluissemus. 6. Hoc fecit ut Hannibal bellum componere velit. 7. Causa hostium circumveniendorum (*or* causa hostes circumveniendi) celeriter iter facere volebat. 8. Cum valetudine gravi premeretur lectica ferri maluit (*or* malebat). 9. In Apuliam ad consulibus obviam veniendum iter fecit (*or* causa consulibus obviam veniendi, *or* consulibus obviam ventum). 10. Nullo resistente causa urbis expugnandae (*or* causa urbis vi capiendae, *or* causa urbem expugnandi, *or* ad urbem expugnandam) Romam profectus est. 11. Quintus Fabius Maximus se ei obiicere voluit. 12. Causa urbis oppugnandae Romam proficisci nolebant (variations are possible as in sentence 10). 13. Hoc fecit ne consul urbem relinquere vellet (*or* urbe exire, decedere, discedere). 14. Causa Romanos oppugnandi Capuam reversus est. 15. Consulem cum exercitu circumventum occidit.

Exercise 31.

1. Vereor ut Caesar rex fiat. 2. Verebar ut Caesar rex fieret. 3. Verebantur ne Caesar flumen transiret. 4. Verentur ne Caesar flumen transeat. 5. Caesar verebatur rex fieri. 6. Caesar veretur rex fieri. 7. Caesar veretur flumen transire. 8. Caesar verebatur flumen transire. 9. Virtutem colendo beati fiemus. 10. Non ita multis diebus hi fient consules. 11. Hanc post rem gestam callidissimus dux fiam. 12. Caesar dixit eum (illum) dolo consulem factum esse. 13. Caesar dicit se nihil (non) timere (vereri) ne Cicero consul fiat. 14. Homines fiunt callidi (*or* boni) duces militares res exercendo. 15. Ex hoc intellegi potest quantus ille dux factus sit. (Latin says "it is able to be perceived," not *intellegere.*)

Exercise 32.

1. Eum poenituit (*or* poenitebat, it was pitying) filii ducis quem apud Rhodanum fugaverat. 2. Me oportet patriam defendere domum revocatum. 3. Eum oportuit (*or* oportebat) patriam defendere domum revocatum. 4. Me delectat tantum bellum composuisse (quod tantum bellum composui). 5. Eos delectat quod reliquos e fuga collegerunt. 6. Romanos puduit (pudebat) quod apud Trebiam ab Hannibale superati erant (*or* superatos esse *without* quod). 7. Scio Romanos puduisse quod apud Trebiam superati sint (Subjunctive because of Oratio Obliqua). 8. Scivit Romanos poenituisse quod Carthaginem delevissent. (In the last two sentences the accusative and infinitive for *quod* was also possible.) 9. Tibi licet esse consuli Romae neque exercitui praeesse. 10. Ei licuisset esse regi Carthagine si vellet. 11. Ei libebat Hadrumeti permanere (morari) reliquos ex exercitu colligenti. 12. Intererat militum fideliter jussis Hannibalis

parere: nostra (interest) Hannibalem ipsum superare. 13. Omnium interest facere ea quae recta sunt (those things which are right). 14. Dixit sibi licuisse novis dilectibus exercitum comparare. 15. Numidas poenituit Hannibali insidiatos esse (*or* quod insidiati erant). 16. Eis persuasum est ut hoc faciant. 17. Agris a Poenis nocebitur (*or* Poeni agris nocebunt). 18. Si agris a Poenis nocitum erit, Romam legatos mittemus. 19. Regi ab optimo quoque parebitur. 20. Militibus imperatum est ut ex urbe tribus diebus decederent.

Exercise 33.

1. Legati Romam veniunt qui senatui populoque Romam gratias agant (*you could say also* ut . . . agant). 2. Legati Romam venerunt qui (*or* ut) senatui populoque Romam gratias agant. 3. Legati Romam ierunt qui (*or* ut) pacem a Romanis peterent. 4. Legati Romam ibunt qui (*or* ut) pacem a Romanis petant. 5. Legati Roma venerunt qui de ejus voluntate explorent atque consiliis clandestinis operam dent (the above are all *qui* Final clauses). 6. Carthaginienses non ii sunt qui pacem faciant (*qui* Consecutive). 7. Romani non ii erant qui pacem peterent (*qui* Consecutive). 8. Vitam priusquam inimicitiam deposuit ille, qui quidem nunquam animo destiterit cum Romanis bellare (*qui* Causal). 9. Ego, qui serius advenissem, non patrem meum vidi (*qui* Causal). 10. Ille, cujus opera bellum susceptum foret (*or* esset) civitate expulsus est (*qui* Causal). 11. Te, cujus opera hoc bellum susceptum sit, cum imperio apud exercitum habebimus (*qui* Concessive). 12. Ii qui (*or* cum) revocati essent, domum redierunt (*qui* Causal). 13. Ii qui revocati sint domum redibunt (*qui* Causal). 14. Ab eis petierunt ut captivi Fregellis essent (*ut* Substantival). 15. Eis qui pacem secum fecissent coronam auream dederunt (*qui* Causal).

Exercise 34.

1. Milites oppugnaverunt qui in exterius vallum tela jaciebant. 2. Hostias Jovi optimo maximo immolabant. 3. Pater filio major est capite. 4. Dicit filium patre minorem esse capite. 5. Ad te, qui mihi amicus fueris, hoc donum parvum mitto. 6. Plures fame quam morbo interierunt. 7. Dixit plurimos fame interiisse. 8. Optimum quemque oportet patriam quantum possunt (*or* potest) defendere (*or* Optimus quisque debet patriam, *etc.*, *or* Patria optimo cuique defendenda est). 9. Ad extremos fines provinciae Galliae progressi sunt. 10. Aliquot horas milites Cæsaris tela in hostes jam conjiciebant. (*For several hours . . . were already hurling.*) 11. Hannibal postquam domo profugit (exiit) aliquot annos apud exteras nationes habitabat. 12. Postremo (extremo *or* tandem) ad oram Africae accessit si forte Carthaginienses ad bellum induceret. 13. Primo summo monte constiterant; postremo ad meum redierunt. 14. Eos ratus sui capiendi gratia missos Hannibal tandem (postremo) navem clam ascendit. 15. Hac re palam facta, postero die Carthaginienses duas naves miserunt quae eum comprehenderent (*qui* Final).

Exercise 35.

1. Cum naves solvisset et vela ventis dedisset duae naves missae sunt quae eum comprehenderent. 2. Cum naves solverit et vela ventis dederit duas naves mittemus quae eum comprehendant. 3. A servulo interfectus est priusquam epistolam (litteras) scriberet (Subjunctive because the result is prevented). 4. Servus eum interficere jussus est priusquam epistolam scribat (Subjunctive of the intention). 5. Antiocho fugato, fugit ille priusquam Romani eum comprehendere possent (*or* potuerunt. The Subjunctive denotes that he fled to prevent the

seizure; the Indicative simply connects the clauses by time). 6. Dum epistolam Romam ad matrem scribit eum servulus interfecit. (Note "to Rome to his mother," *or* Eum epistolam Romam, *etc.*, scribentem servulus interfecit). 7. Dum sui multitudine adversariorum superabantur Hannibal eos quibuscum conflixerat fugabat. 8. Dum Carthagine Cretam iter facit eum latrones oppugnaverunt (*or* Carthagine eum Cretam iter facientem latrones oppugnaverunt). 9. Hannibal mansit donec Rhodiorum classis conflixit (*or* confligeret. The Subjunctive denotes that he waited intentionally, the Indicative simply that he waited, without any idea of intentional waiting or expectation of joining battle being expressed). 10. Consistere nolebat donec Cretam ad Gortynios veniret. 11. Dum Hannibal cum Antiocho erat, ille omnibus in proeliis superior erat. 12. Hoc sine dubio accidisset, si Hannibal Romanis sui potestatem fecisset. 13. Abire constituit priusquam in magnum periculum propter avaritiam Cretensium veniret. 14. Dum Antiochus Hannibalis consiliis parere volebat in bello felix (*or* superior) erat. 15. Desperatis rebus Hannibal in Syriam ad Antiochum venit.

Exercise 36.

1. Trecentas sexaginta quinque amphoras plumbo impleverant. 2. Ducentae viginti novem amphorae auro et argento impletae erant. 3. Puero tria poma dedit. 4. Dixit se ducentas naves Hannibali daturum fuisse. 5. Roma anno septingentesimo quinquagesimo tertio ante Christum natum condita est. 6. Pugna Cannensis anno ducentesimo sexto decimo ante Christum natum facta est. 7. Hannibal septuaginta annos vixit. 8. Caesar ducibus binas naves dederat. 9. Eis ducenos sestertios donabimus. 10. Darius in Europam amplius mille navibus

navigavit (*amplius* has no effect on the case). 11. Ter Romani in hostes impetum fecerunt; tandem fugati sunt. 12. Vicies antehac urbem Romam vidi. 13. Hannibal ex Alpibus in Italiam (cum) quinque et viginta milibus hominum descendit. 14. Sedecim annos, Hannibale duce, Carthaginienses cum Romanis bellaverunt. 15. Anno ducentesimo secundo ante Christum natum apud Zamam Poenos devicerunt Romani.

Exercise 37.

1. Dixit Eumenem utrobique propter Romanorum societatem plus valere. (He said, "Eumenes has more power," *plus valet*). 2. Dixit eos conventuros esse eo die quo navale proelium facturus esset (he might be about to fight). 3. Dixit eos se vidisse qui in hoc navali proelio pugnarent (Latin says "who might be fighting"). 4. Dixit eos se vidisse qui in hoc navali proelio pugnarent (the same as sentence 3 exactly). 5. Dixit se facturum ut scirent in qua nave aurum veheretur. 6. Arbitrabatur si hunc removisset omnia sibi facilia fore. 7. Dixit se ducem vidisse qui tamdiu cum Romanis pugnavisset. 8. Dicit se nuntium (tabellarium) vidisse qui cum caduceo ad Eumenem missus sit. 9. Dicit eos, qui navem Eumenis oppugnent, fugari. 10. Dicit eos qui navem Eumenis oppugnaverint fugatum iri (direct form: Those who attack will be routed, *Ei qui oppugnaverint fugabuntur*). 11. Hannibal nuntium mittit priusquam signum proelii dari possit. 12. Dixit Hannibalem nuntium misisse priusquam signum proelii dari posset. 13. Dixit Hannibalem nuntium misisse priusquam signum proelii datum esset. 14. Dixit Hannibalem tabellarium misisse ut palam faceret suis quo loco rex esset. 15. Dixit se omnibus eis praecepisse ut in navem Eumenis unam concurrerent.

Exercise 38.

1. Dixit se id non consecuturum esse nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset. 2. Dixit se id non consecuturum esse nisi intra praesidia sua se reciperet. 3. Dixit se id non consecuturum fuisse nisi intra praesidia sua se recepisset. 4. Dixit se non stultum futurum esse si id faceret. 5. Pollicitus est si illum cepissent aut interfecissent magnum eis praemium fore (*or* magno eis praemio fore). 6. Affirmavit (Dixit) si illum cepissent aut interfecissent magnum eis praemium futurum fuisse. 7. Dixit si illum interficerent magnum eis praemium fore. 8. Dixit nisi fuga salutem petiisset futurum fuisse ut interficeretur (this construction is used because the Latin verb has no Future Perfect Infinitive Passive). 9. Dixit eos nisi fuga salutem peterent interfectum iri. 10. Dicit nisi fuga salutem petierint eos interfectum iri (*or* fore ut ei interficiantur, "it-to-be-about-to-be that they may be slain"). 11. Dicit nisi fuga salutem petiissent futurum fuisse ut interficerentur. 12. Dicit eos nisi stulti fuissent illud non facturos fuisse. 13. Etsi hujus causam mirabatur tamen proelium committere non dubitavit (*or* quominus proelium committeret). 14. Nemo dubitabat quin aliquid de pace scriptum esset (*or*, *more literally*, quin aliquid de pace scriptum attulisset). 15. Nave hunc in modum (*or* ita) suis declarata eodem unde egressus erat se recepit.

Exercise 39.

1. Existimabant se Hannibale vivo nunquam sine insidiis fore. 2. Legatos in Bithyniam misimus, in iis Flamininum qui auxilium a rege petant. 3. Apud unum e consularibus cenabamus. 4. Tantum terrorem exercitui Romanorum injicient ut nemo sub muros venire ausurus sit. 5. Hannibal sub muris hujus oppidi aciem instruxit.

6. Usque a rubro mari arma in Italiam inferre conati sunt. 7. Scilicet verebar ne id usu veniret quod accidit. 8. Itaque eodem se recepit unde venerat. 9. Nisi Hannibal venenum sumpsisset a Romanis interfectus esset. 10. Non poterat intellegere quare id fieret. 11. Postquam eum Romani undique obsederunt venenum sumpsit. 12. Quo plus pecuniae habebis, eo miserior eris (*note* plus pecuniae, "the more of money"). 13. Naves adeo serpentibus oppletae erant ut non possent videre quid vitarent. 14. Dixit se facile locum ubi essent inventurum fuisse si ita voluisset. 15. Se receperunt priusquam hostes naves capere possent.

Exercise 40.

1. Quae jacta subito risum pugnantibus concitarunt (concitarunt *contracted for* concitaverunt). 2. Adeo nova re perterriti sunt ut non videre possent quid potissimum vitarent. 3. Rem male gerere est mali ducis. 4. Etsi Antiochum multa stultissime conari videbant nulla in re eum deseruerunt. 5. Cum se (eum) minus robustum domesticis opibus esse videret ceteros reges conciliavit. 6. Bellum acriter inter eos terra marique gerebatur: quo magis Hannibal cupiebat eum opprimi. 7. Dixit se facillime inventurum esse locum ubi ille esset. 8. Militibus imperavit ut propere ad se nuntiarent num undique obsessus esset (*or* obsideretur, "was being beset"). 9. Puer celerrime nuntiavit omnes exitus occupatos esse. 10. Poeni senserunt id non fortuito factum neque imperium diutius retinendum. 11. Ad te celeriter nuntiabo quid sit. 12. Si nobis imperavisses facile invenissemus ubi ille esset. 13. Vidit eos non fortuito venisse sed se petere. 14. Memor virtutis pristinae venenum sumpsit ne vitam alieno arbitrio dimitteret. 15. Nuntii nuntiaverunt plures praeter consuetudinem armatos apparere.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

	Cardinal.	Ordinal.
1	Un-us, -a, -um, *one*	Prīm-us, -a, -um, *first*
2	Du-o, -ae, -o, *two*	Secund-us, -a, -um (alter), *second*
3	Trēs, tria, *three*	Terti-us, -a, -um, *third*
4	Quattuor, *four*, etc.	Quart-us, -a, -um, *fourth*, etc.
5	Quinque	Quint-us, -a, -um
6	Sex	Sext-us, -a, -um
7	Septem	Septim-us, -a, -um
8	Octō	Octāv-us, -a, -um
9	Novem	Nōn-us, -a, -um
10	Decem	Decim-us, -a, -um
11	Undecim	Undecim-us, -a, -um
12	Duodecim	Duodecim-us, -a, -um
13	Tredecim	Terti-us decim-us, etc.
14	Quattuordecim	Quart-us decim-us, etc.
15	Quindecim	Quint-us decim-us, etc.
16	Sēdecim	Sext-us decim-us, etc.
17	Septendecim	Septim-us decim-us, etc.
18	Duodēvigintī	Duodēvīcēsim-us, etc.
19	Undēvīgintī	Undēvīcēsim-us, etc.
20	Vīgintī	Vīcēsim-us, etc.
30	Trīgintā	Trīcēsim-us, etc.
40	Quadrāgintā	Quadrāgēsim-us, etc.
50	Quinquāgintā	Quinquāgēsim-us, etc.
60	Sexāgintā	Sexāgēsim-us, etc.
70	Septuāgintā	Septuāgēsim-us, etc.
80	Octōgintā	Octōgēsim-us, etc.
90	Nōnāgintā	Nōnāgēsim-us, etc.
100	Centum	Centēsim-us, etc.
200	Ducent-ī, -ae, -a	Ducentēsim-us, etc.
300	Trecent-ī, -ae, -a	Trecentēsim-us, etc.
400	Quadringent-ī, -ae, -a	Quadringentēsim-us, etc.
500	Quingent-ī, -ae, -a	Quingentēsim-us, etc.
600	Sexcent-ī, -ae, -a	Sexcentēsim-us, etc.
700	Septingent-ī, -ae, -a	Septingentēsim-us, etc.
800	Octingent-ī, -ae, -a	Octingentēsim-us, etc.
900	Nongent-ī, -ae, -a	Nongentēsim-us, etc.
1,000	Mille	Millēsim-us, etc.
2,000	Duo mīlia	Bis millēsim-us, etc.
100,000	Centum mīlia	Centiēs millēsim-us, etc.
1,000,000	Deciēs centēna mīlia	Deciēs centiēs millēsim-us, etc.

Distributive.	Numeral Adverbs.
Singul-ī, -ae, -a, *one each*	Semel, *once*
Bin-ī, -ae, -a, *two each*	Bis, *twice*
Tern-ī (trīn-ī), -ae, -a, *three each*	Ter, *thrice*
Quatern-ī, -ae, -a, *four each*, etc.	Quater, *four times*, etc.
Quīn-ī, -ae, -a	Quinquiēs
Sēn-ī, -ae, -a	Sexiēs
Septēn-ī, -ae, -a	Septiēs
Octōn-ī, -ae, -a	Octiēs
Novēn-ī, -ae, -a	Noviēs
Dēn-ī, -ae, -a	Deciēs
Undēn-ī, -ae, -a	Undeciēs
Duodēn-ī, -ae, -a	Duodeciēs
Tern-ī dēn-ī, -ae, -a	Ter deciēs
Quatern-ī dēn-ī, -ae, -a	Quater deciēs
Quīn-ī dēn-ī, -ae, -a	Quinquiēs deciēs
Sēn-ī dēn-ī, -ae, -a	Sexiēs deciēs
Septēn-ī dēn-ī, -ae, -a	Septiēs deciēs
Duodēvīcēn-ī, -ae, -a	Duodēvīciēs
Undēvīcēn-ī, -ae, -a	Undēvīciēs
Vīcēn-ī, -ae, -a	Vīciēs
Trīcēn-ī, -ae, -a	Trīciēs
Quadrāgēn-ī, -ae, -a	Quadrāgiēs
Quinquāgēn-ī, -ae, -a	Quinquāgiēs
Sexāgēn-ī, -ae, -a	Sexāgiēs
Septuāgēn-ī, -ae, -a	Septuāgiēs
Octōgēn-ī, -ae, -a	Octōgiēs
Nōnāgēn-ī, -ae, -a	Nōnāgiēs
Centēn-ī, -ae, -a	Centiēs
Ducēn-ī, -ae, -a	Ducentiēs
Trecēn-ī, -ae, -a	Trecentiēs
Quadringēn-ī, -ae, -a	Quadringentiēs
Quingēn-ī, -ae, -a	Quingentiēs
Sexcēn-ī, -ae, -a	Sexcentiēs
Septingēn-ī, -ae, -a	Septingentiēs
Octingēn-ī, -ae, -a	Octingentiēs
Nongēn-ī, -ae, -a	Nongentiēs
Singula mīlia	Mīliēs
Bīna mīlia	Bis mīliēs
Centēna mīlia	Centiēs mīliēs
Deciēs centēna mīlia	Deciēs centiēs mīliēs

TABLES OF VERBS.

The quantity or length of syllables in these tables is marked on this plan: Short Vowels are not marked at all; vowels which are long because they stand before two consonants are not marked; other long vowels are marked long.

Verb *Sum*, I am.

(Tenses from the Present Stems.)

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Present.		*Present.*	
Sum, I am.	*Sumus*, we are.	*Sim*	*Sīmus*
Es, thou art.	*Estis*, you are.	*Sīs*	*Sītis*
Est, he is.	*Sunt*, they are.	*Sit*	*Sint*
Imperfect.		*Imperfect.*	
Eram, I was.	*Erāmus*, we were.	*Es-sem*	*Essēmus*
Erās, thou wert.	*Erātis*, you were.	*Es-sēs*	*Essētis*
Erat, he was.	*Erant*, they were.	*Es-set*	*Essent*
Future.			
Erō, I shall be.	*Erimus*, we shall be.	INFINITIVE PRESENT.	
Eris, thou wilt be.	*Eritis*, you will be.	*Esse.*	
Erit, he will be.	*Erunt*, they will be.		

IMPERATIVE.

Es, be (thou).	*Estō*, thou shalt be.
Este, be (ye).	*Estōte*, ye shall be.
	Estō, he shall be.
	Suntō, they shall be.

(From Perfect Stem *Fu-*.)

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Perfect.	*Perfect.*
Fu-ī, I have been *or* I was.	*Fu-erim*
Fu-istī, thou hast been *or* thou wert.	*Fu-erīs*
Fu-it, he has been *or* he was.	*Fu-erit*
Fu-imus, we have been *or* we were.	*Fu-erīmus*
Fu-istis, you have been *or* you were.	*Fu-erītis*
Fu-ērunt, or *-ēre*, they have been *or* they were.	*Fu-erint*

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pluperfect.	*Pluperfect.*
Fu-eram, I had been.	*Fu-issem*
Fu-erās, thou hadst been.	*Fu-issēs*
Fu-erat, he had been.	*Fu-isset*
Fu-erāmus, we had been.	*Fu-issēmus*
Fu-erātis, you had been.	*Fu-issētis*
Fu-erant, they had been.	*Fu-issent*
Future Perfect.	Present Infinitive.
Fu-erō, I shall have been.	*Fu-isse.*
Fu-erĭs, thou wilt have been.	
Fu-erit, we shall have been.	
Fu-erĭmus, we shall have been.	
Fu-erĭtis, you will have been.	
Fu-erint, they will have been.	

(From Supine Stem *Fut-*.)

First Supine wanting.
Second Supine wanting.
Future Participle. *Futūrus, -a, -um.*
Future Infinitive. *Futūrus esse.*

TABLES OF THE REGULAR VERBS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

First Conjugation. Example, *Amo*, I love.

(From Present Stem *Am-*.)

Indicative Mood.		Subjunctive Mood.	
Present.		*Present.*	
Am-ō	*-āmus*	*Am-em*	*-ēmus*
-ās	*-ātis*	*-ēs*	*-ētis*
-at	*-ant*	*-et*	*-ent*
Imperfect.		*Imperfect.*	
Am-ābam	*-ābāmus*	*Am-ārem*	*-ārēmus*
-ābās	*-ābātis*	*-ārēs*	*-ārētis*
-ābat	*-ābant*	*-āret*	*-ārent*

INDICATIVE.

Future.

Am-ābō	*-ābimus*
-ābis	*-ābitis*
-ābit	*-ābunt*

Present Participle. *Am-ans*

Present Infinitive. *Am-āre*

Gerund. *Am-andum*, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Am-ā	*-āte*	*Am-ātō*	*-ātōte*
Love thou.	Love ye.	Thou shalt love.	Ye shall love.
		-ātō	*-antō*
		He shall love.	They shall love.

(From Perfect Stem *Amav-*.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

Amāv-ī	*-imus*
-istī	*-istis*
-it	*-ērunt* or *ēre*

Pluperfect.

Amāv-eram	*-erāmus*
-erās	*-erātis*
-erat	*-erant*

Future Perfect.

Amāv-erō	*-erĭmus*
-erĭs	*-erĭtis*
-erit	*-erint*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

Amāv-erim	*-erĭmus*
-erĭs	*-erĭtis*
-erit	*-erint*

Pluperfect.

Amāv-issem	*-issēmus*
-issēs	*-issētis*
-isset	*-issent*

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

Amāv-isse

(From Supine Stem *Amat-*.)

First Supine.	*Amāt-um.*
Second Supine.	*Amāt-ū.*
Future Participle.	*Amāt-ūrus, -a, -um.*

Future Infinitive = Future Participle + *esse* = *Amātūrus esse*, to be about to love.

Second Conjugation. Example, *Moneo*, I warn.

(From Present Stem *Mon-*.)

Indicative Mood.

Present.

Mon-eō	*-ēmus*
-ēs	*-ētis*
-et	*-ent*

Imperfect.

Mon-ēbam	*-ēbāmus*
-ēbās	*-ēbātis*
-ēbat	*-ēbant*

Future.

Mon-ēbō	*-ēbimus*
-ēbis	*-ēbitis*
-ēbit	*-ēbunt*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

Mon-eam	*-eāmus*
-eās	*-eātis*
-eat	*-eant*

Imperfect.

Mon-ērem	*-ērēmus*
-ērēs	*-ērētis*
-ēret	*-ērent*

Present Participle. *Mon-ens*

Present Infinitive. *Mon-ēre*

Gerund. *Mon-endum*, etc.

Imperative Mood.

Mon-ē	*-ēte*	*Mon-ētō*	*-ētōte*
Warn thou.	Warn ye.	Thou shalt warn.	Ye shall warn.
		-ētō	*-ento*
		He shall warn.	They shall warn.

(From Perfect Stem *Monu-*.)

Indicative Mood.

Perfect.

Monu-ī	*-imus*
-istī	*-istis*
-it	*-ērunt* or *ēre*

Pluperfect.

Monu-eram	*-erāmus*
-erās	*-erātis*
-erat	*-erant*

Future Perfect.

Monu-erō	*-erĭmus*
-erĭs	*-erĭtis*
-erit	*-erint*

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect.

Monu-erim	*-erĭmus*
-erĭs	*-erĭtis*
-erit	*-erint*

Pluperfect.

Monu-issem	*-issēmus*
-issēs	*-issētis*
-isset	*-issent*

Perfect Infinitive.

Monu-isse

(From Supine Stem *Monit-*.)

First Supine.	*Monit-um.*
Second Supine.	*Monit-ū.*
Future Participle.	*Monit-ūrus, -a, -um.*

Future Infinitive = Future Participle + *esse* = *Monitūrus esse*, to be about to advise.

Third Conjugation. Example, *Rego*, I rule.

(From Present Stem *Reg-*.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Reg-ō	*-imus*
-is	*-itis*
-it	*-unt*

Imperfect.

Reg-ēbam	*-ēbāmus*
-ēbās	*-ēbātis*
-ēbat	*-ēbant*

Future.

Reg-am	*-ēmus*
-ēs	*-ētis*
-et	*-ent*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Reg-am	*-āmus*
-ās	*-ātis*
-at	*-ant*

Imperfect.

Reg-erem	*-erēmus*
-erēs	*-erētis*
-eret	*-erent*

Present Participle. *Reg-ens*

Present Infinitive. *Reg-ere*

Gerund. *Reg-endum*, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Reg-e	*-ite*	*Reg-itō*	*-itōte*
Rule thou.	Rule ye.	Thou shalt rule.	Ye shall rule.
		-itō	*-untō*
		He shall rule.	They shall rule.

(From Perfect Stem *Rex-*.)

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

Rex-ī	*-imus*
-istī	*-istis*
-it	*-ērunt* or *-ēre*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

Rex-erim	*-erĭmus*
-erĭs	*-erĭtis*
-erit	*-erint*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pluperfect.		*Pluperfect.*	
Rex-eram	*-erāmus*	*Rex-issem*	*-issēmus*
-erās	*-erātis*	*-issēs*	*-issētis*
-erat	*-erant*	*-isset*	*-issent*
Future Perfect.		PERFECT INFINITIVE.	
Rex-erō	*-erĭmus*	*Rex-isse*	
-erĭs	*-erĭtis*		
-erit	*-erint*		

(From Supine Stem *Rect-*.)

First Supine.	*Rect-um.*
Second Supine.	*Rect-ū.*
Future Participle.	*Rect-ūrus, -a, -um.*

Future Infinitive = Future Participle + *esse* = *Rectūrus esse*, to be about to rule.

Fourth Conjugation. Example, *Audio*, I hear.

(From Present Stem *Aud-*.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
Present.		*Present.*	
Aud-iō	*-īmus*	*Aud-iam*	*-iāmus*
-īs	*-ītis*	*-iās*	*-iātis*
-it	*-iunt*	*-iat*	*-iant*
Imperfect.		*Imperfect.*	
Aud-iēbam	*-iēbāmus*	*Aud-īrem*	*-īrēmus*
-iēbās	*-iēbātis*	*-īrēs*	*-īrētis*
-iēbat	*-iēbant*	*-īret*	*-īrent*
Future.		Present Participle.	*Aud-iens*
Aud-iam	*-iēmus*	Present Infinitive.	*Aud-īre*
-iēs	*-iētis*	Gerund.	*Aud-iendum*, etc.
-iet	*-ient*		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Aud-ī	*-īte*	*Aud-ītō*	*-ītōte*
Hear thou.	Hear ye.	Thou shalt hear.	Ye shall hear.
		-ītō	*-iuntō*
		He shall hear.	They shall hear.

(From Perfect Stem *Audiv-*.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

Audīv-ī	*-imus*
-istī	*-istis*
-it	*-ērunt* or *-ēre*

Pluperfect.

Audiv-eram	*-erāmus*
-erās	*-erātis*
-erat	*-erant*

Future Perfect.

Audīv-erō	*-erĭmus*
-erĭs	*-erĭtis*
-erit	*-erint*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Perfect.

Audīv-erim	*-erĭmus*
-erĭs	*-erĭtis*
-erit	*-erint*

Pluperfect.

Audiv-issem	*-issēmus*
-issēs	*-issētis*
-isset	*-issent*

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

Audīv-isse

(From Supine Stem *Audit-*.)

First Supine.	*Audit-um.*
Second Supine.	*Audit-ū.*
Future Participle.	*Audit-ūrus, -a, -um.*

Future Infinitive = Future Participle + *esse* = *Auditurus esse*, to be about to hear.

PASSIVE VOICE.

First Conjugation. *Amor*, I am loved.

(From Present Stem *Am-*.)

Indicative Mood.		Subjunctive Mood.	
Present.		*Present.*	
Am-or	*Am-āmur*	*Am-er*	*Am-ēmur*
I am being loved.	We are being loved.		
-āris (*-are*)	*-āmini*	*-ēris* (*-ēre*)	*-ēminī*
You are being loved.	Ye are being loved.		
-atur	*-antur*	*-ētur*	*-entur*
He is being loved.	They are being loved.		
Imperfect.		*Imperfect.*	
Am-ābar	*-ābāmur*	*Am-ārer*	*-ārēmur*
I was being loved.	We were being loved.		
-ābāris (*-ābāre*)	*-ābāminī*	*-ārēris* (*-ārēre*)	*-ārēminī*
You were being loved.	You were being loved.		
-ābātur	*-ābantur*	*-ārētur*	*-ārentur*
He was being loved.	They were being loved.		
Future.		Present Participle.	
Am-ābor	*-ābimur*	——	
I shall be loved.	We shall be loved.	Present Infinitive.	
-āberis (*-ābere*)	*-ābiminī*	*Amārī*	
You shall be loved.	Ye shall be loved.	To be loved.	
-ābitur	*-ābuntur*	Gerundive.	
He shall be loved.	They shall be loved.	*Amandus, -a, -um*	

Imperative Mood.

Am-āre	*-āminī*	*Am-ātor*		
Be thou loved.	Be ye loved.	You shall be loved.		
		-ātor	*-antor*	
		He shall be loved.	They shall be loved.	

Perfect Tenses.

Indicative Mood.				Subjunctive Mood.			
Perfect.				*Perfect.*			
Amātus, etc.,	*sum*	*Amātī*, etc.,	*sumus*	*Amātus*, etc.,	*sim*	*Amātī*, etc.,	*sīmus*
,,	*es*	,,	*estis*	,,	*sīs*	,,	*sītis*
,,	*est*	,,	*sunt*	,,	*sit*	,,	*sint*
Pluperfect.				*Pluperfect.*			
Amātus	*eram*	*Amātī*	*erāmus*	*Amātus*	*essem*	*Amātī*	*essēmus*
,,	*erās*	,,	*erātis*	,,	*essēs*	,,	*essētis*
,,	*erat*	,,	*erant*	,,	*esset*	,,	*essent*
Future Perfect.							
Amātus	*ero*	*Amātī*	*erimus*				
,,	*eris*	,,	*eritis*				
,,	*erit*	,,	*erunt*				

Perfect Infinitive.
Amātus esse

(From Supine Stem *Amāt-*.)

Past Participle Passive. *Amātus, -a, -um.*
Future Infinitive Passive. *Amātum īrī.*

Second Conjugation. *Moneor*, I am warned.

(From Present Stem *Mon-*.)

Indicative Mood.		Subjunctive Mood.	
Present.		*Present.*	
Mon-eor	*-ēmur*	*Mon-ear*	*-eāmur*
-ēris (or *-ēre*)	*-ēminī*	*-eāris* (or *-eāre*)	*-eāminī*
-ētur	*-entur*	*-eātur*	*-eantur*

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
Imperfect.		*Imperfect.*	
Mon-ēbar	*-ēbāmur*	*Mon-ērer*	*-ērēmur*
-ēbāris (or *-ēbāre*)	*-ēbāminī*	*-ērēris* (or *-ērēre*)	*-ērēminī*
-ēbātur	*-ēbantur*	*-ērētur*	*-ērentur*
Future.		Present Participle.	
Mon-ēbor	*-ēbimur*	——	
-ēberis (or *-ēbere*)	*-ēbiminī*	Present Infinitive.	
-ēbitur	*-ēbuntur*	*Monērī*	
		Gerundive.	
		Monendus, -a, -um	

Imperative Mood.

Mon-ēre	*-ēminī*	*Mon-ētor*	
		-ētor	*-entor*

Perfect Tenses.

Indicative Mood.		Subjunctive Mood.	
Perfect.		*Perfect.*	
Monitus sum	*Monitī sumus*	*Monitus sim*	*Monitī sīmus*
,, *es*	,, *estis*	,, *sīs*	,, *sītis*
,, *est*	,, *sunt*	,, *sit*	,, *sint*
Pluperfect.		*Pluperfect.*	
Monitus eram	*Monitī erāmus*	*Monitus essem*	*Monitī essēmus*
,, *erās*	,, *erātis*	,, *essēs*	,, *essētis*
,, *erat*	,, *erant*	,, *esset*	,, *essent*
Future Perfect.			
Monitus erō	*Monitī erimus*	Perfect Infinitive.	
,, *eris*	,, *eritis*	*Monitus esse*	
,, *erit*	,, *erint*		

(From Supine Stem.)

Past Participle Passive. *Monitus, -a, -um.*
Future Infinitive Passive. *Monitum īrī.*

Third Conjugation. *Regor*, I am ruled.

(From Present Stem *Reg-*.)

Indicative Mood.		Subjunctive Mood.	
Present.		*Present.*	
Reg-or	*-imur*	*Reg-ar*	*-āmur*
-eris (-ere)	*-iminī*	*-āris (-āre)*	*-āminī*
-itur	*-untur*	*-ātur*	*-antur*
Imperfect.		*Imperfect.*	
Reg-ēbar	*-ēbāmur*	*Reg-erer*	*-erēmur*
-ēbāris (-ēbāre)	*-ēbāminī*	*-erēris (-erēre)*	*-erēminī*
-ēbātur	*-ēbantur*	*-erētur*	*-erentur*
Future.		Present Participle.	
Reg-ar	*-ēmur*	——	
-ēris (ēre)	*-ēminī*	Present Infinitive.	
-ētur	*-entur*	*Reg-ī*	
		Gerundive.	
		Reg-endus -a, -um	

Imperative Mood.

Reg-ere	*-iminī*	*Reg-itor*	
		-itor	*-untor*

Perfect Tenses.

Indicative Mood.		Subjunctive Mood.	
Perfect.		*Perfect.*	
Rectus sum	*Rectī sumus*	*Rectus sim*	*Rectī sīmus*
,, *es*	,, *estis*	,, *sīs*	,, *sītis*
,, *est*	,, *sunt*	,, *sit*	,, *sint*
Pluperfect.		*Pluperfect.*	
Rectus eram	*Rectī erāmus*	*Rectus essem*	*Rectī essēmus*
,, *erās*	,, *erātis*	,, *essēs*	,, *essētis*
,, *erat*	,, *erant*	,, *esset*	,, *essent*
Future Perfect.			
Rectus erō	*Rectī erimus*	Perfect Infinitive.	
,, *eris*	,, *eritis*	*Rectus esse*	
,, *erit*	,, *erunt*		

(From Supine Stem *Rect-*.)

Past Participle Passive. *Rectus, -a, -um.*
Future Infinitive Passive. *Rectum īrī.*

Fourth Conjugation. *Audior*, I am heard.

(From Present Stem *Aud-*.)

Indicative Mood.		Subjunctive Mood.	
Present.		*Present.*	
Aud-ior	*-īmur*	*Aud-iar*	*-iāmur*
-īris (-ire)	*-īminī*	*-iāris (-iāre)*	*-iāminī*
-ītur	*-iuntur*	*-iātur*	*-iantur*
Imperfect.		*Imperfect.*	
Aud-iēbar	*-iēbāmur*	*Aud-īrer*	*-īrēmur*
-iēbāris (-iēbāre)	*-iēbāminī*	*-īrēris (-īrēre)*	*-īrēminī*
-iēbātur	*-iēbantur*	*-īrētur*	*-īrentur*
Future.		Present Participle.	
Aud-iar	*-iēmur*	——	
-iēris (-iēre)	*-iēminī*	Present Infinitive.	
-iētur	*-ientur*	*Aud-īrī*	
		Gerundive.	
		Audiendus, -a, -um	

Imperative Mood.

Aud-īre	*-īminī*	*Aud-ītor*	
		-ītor	*-iuntor*

Perfect Tenses.

Indicative Mood.		Subjunctive Mood.	
Perfect.		*Perfect.*	
Audītus sum	*Audītī sumus*	*Audītus sim*	*Audītī sīmus*
,, *es*	,, *estis*	,, *sīs*	,, *sītis*
,, *est*	,, *sunt*	,, *sit*	,, *sint*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pluperfect.		*Pluperfect.*	
Audītus eram	*Audītī erāmus*	*Audītus essem*	*Audītī essēmus*
,, *erās*	,, *erātis*	,, *essēs*	,, *essētis*
,, *erat*	,, *erant*	,, *esset*	,, *essent*

Future Perfect.

Audītus erō	*Audītī erimus*
,, *eris*	,, *eritis*
,, *erit*	,, *erunt*

PERFECT INFINITIVE.

Audītus esse

(From Supine Stem *Audit-*.)

Past Participle Passive. *Audītus, -a, -um.*
Future Infinitive Passive. *Audītum īrī.*

INDICATIVE.						
	Singular.			*Plural.*		
PRESENT.	Pos-sum	pot-es	pot-est	pos-sumus	pot-estis	pos-sunt
	Volō	vīs	vult	volumus	vultis	volunt
	Nōlō	nōnvīs	nōnvult	nōlumus	nōnvultis	nōlunt
	Mālō	māvīs	māvult	mālumus	māvultis	mālunt
	Ferō	fers	fert	ferimus	fertis	ferunt
	Fīō	fīs	fit	——	——	fīunt
	Eō	īs	it	īmus	ītis	eunt
IMPERFECT.	Pot-eram	-erās	-erat	-erāmus	-erātis	-erant
	Volē-, Nōlē-, Mālē-, Ferē-, Fīē-, I-	-bam -bās	-bāt	-bāmus	-bātis	-bant
FUTURE.	Pot-erō	-eris	-erit	-erimus	-eritis	-erunt
	Vol-, Nōl-, Māl-, Fer-, Fī-	-am -ēs	-et	-ēmus	-ētis	-ent
	I-bō	-bis	-bit	-bimus	-bitis	-bunt

PARTICIPLE.	INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
——	posse	——
Vol-, Nōl-, Māl-, Fer-	velle	vol-, nol-, māl-, fer- -endum
——	nolle	——
I- -ens	malle	e-undum
Gen. euntis	ferre	*Gen.* volendi, etc.
	fieri	
	ire	

	SUBJUNCTIVE.					
	Singular.			*Plural.*		
PRESENT.	Pos-sim	pos-sīs	pos-sit	pos-sīmus	pos-sītis	pos-sint
	Vel-, Nōl-, Māl- } im	-īs	-it	-īmus	-ītis	-int
	Fer-, Fī-, E- } am	-ās	-at	-āmus	-ātis	-ant
IMPERFECT.	Poss-, Vell-, Noll-, Mall-, Ferr-, Fier-, Ir- } em	-ēs	-et	-ēmus	-ētis	-ent

	IMPERATIVE.			
	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	——	——	——	——
	——	——	——	——
	Nōl-ī, nōl-ītō	nōl-ītō	nōl-īte, nōl-ītōte	nōl-untō
	——	——	——	——
	Fer, fer-tō	fer-tō	fer-te, fer-tōte	fer-untō
	Fī	——	fī-te	——
	I, ī-tō	ī-tō	ī-te, ī-tōte	e-untō

Passive of ferō.

INDICATIVE.					
Singular.			*Plural.*		
Fer-or	fer-ris	fer-tur	fer-imur	fer-iminī	fer-untur
Fer-ēbar	fer-ēbāris	fer-ēbātur	fer-ēbāmur	fer-ēbāminī	fer-ēbāntur
Fer-ar	fer-ēris	fer-ētur	fer-ēmur	fer-ēminī	fer-entur
SUBJUNCTIVE.					
Fer-ar	fer-āris	fer-ātur	fer-āmur	fer-āminī	fer-antur
Ferr-er	ferr-ēris	ferr-ētur	ferr-ēmur	ferr-ēminī	ferr-entur
IMPERATIVE.					
Fer-re, fer-tor		fer-tor	fer-iminī	fer-untor	
GERUNDIVE Fer-endus			PRESENT INFINITIVE Ferr-ī		

NOTE.—This Passive is formed according to the regular rules from *fero*.

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF LATIN VERBS.

This list is meant to supplement the Vocabulary. It will probably be easier to find a verb in it than in the other. You should work about in this as much as possible in going over the book the first time, and learn the list off by heart when going over the book the second time. The fourth column gives the ending of the Present Infinitive, which determines to which conjugation the verb belongs.

ALPHABETICAL INDEX TO PRINCIPAL PARTS.

A

Abd-ō	abdid-ī	abdit-um	abd-ere	*hide*
Abig-ō	abēg-ī	abact-um	abig-ere	*drive away*
Abol-eō	abolēv-ī	abolit-um	abol-ēre	*abolish*
Accend-ō	accend-ī	accens-um	accend-ere	*kindle, set on fire*
Accumb-ō	accubu-ī	accubit-um	accumb-ere	*recline at table*
Acu-ō	acu-ī	acūt-um	acu-ere	*sharpen*
Add-ō	addid-ī	addit-um	add-ere	*put to, add*
Adim-ō	adem-ī	adempt-um	adim-ere	*take away*
Adipisc-or	adept-us sum	——	adipisc-ī	*obtain*
Adolesc-ō	adolēv-ī	adult-um	adolesc-ere	*grow up*
Adst-ō	adstit-ī	——	adst-āre	*stand by*
Afflīg-ō	afflix-ī	afflict-um	afflīg-ere	*dash down*
Agnosc-ō	agnōv-ī	agnit-um	agnosc-ere	*recognise*
Ag-ō	ēg-ī	act-um	ag-ere	*drive*
Alg-eō	als-ī	——	alg-ēre	*be cold*
Al-ō	alu-ī	alt-um, alit-um	al-ere	*nourish*
Amic-iō	amicu-ī, amix-ī	amict-um	amic-īre	*clothe*

Amplect-or	amplex-us sum	——	amplect-ī	*embrace*
Aper-iō	aperu-ī	apert-um	aper-īre	*open*
Arc-eō	arcu-ī	——	arc-ēre	*ward off*
Arcess-ō	arcessīv-ī	arcessīt-um	arcess-ere	*summon*
Ard-eō	ars-ī	ars-um	ard-ēre	*be on fire,* (intrs.) *blaze*
Ascend-ō	ascend-ī	ascens-um	ascend-ere	*climb*
Assent-ior	assens-us sum	——	assent-īrī	*agree to*
Argu-ō	argu-ī	——	argu-ere	*show*
Aud-eō	aus-us sum	——	aud-ēre	*dare*
Aug-eō	aux-ī	auct-um	aug-ēre	*increase,* (trs.) *make grow*

B

Bib-ō	bib-ī	——	bib-ere	*drink*

C

Cad-ō	cecid-ī	cās-um	cad-ere	*fall*
Caed-ō	cecīd-ī	caes-um	caed-ere	*cut, fell*
Can-ō	cecin-ī	cant-um	can-ere	*sing*
Capess-ō	capessīv-ī	capessīt-um	capess-ere	*seize eagerly*
Cap-iō	cēp-ī	capt-um	cap-ere	*take*
Carp-ō	carps-ī	carpt-um	carp-ere	*pluck*
Cav-eō	cāv-ī	caut-um	cav-ēre	*beware*
Cēd-ō	cess-ī	cess-um	ced-ere	*yield*
Cens-eō	censu-ī	cens-um	cens-ēre	*think, vote*
Cern-ō	crēv-ī	crēt-um	cern-ere	*distinguish*
Ci-eō	cīv-ī	cit-um	ci-ēre	*rouse*
Cing-ō	cinx-ī	cinct-um	cing-ere	*surround*
Circumd-ō	circumded-ī	circumdat-um	circumd-are	*put round*
Claud-ō	claus-ī	claus-um	claud-ere	*shut*
Cognosc-ō	cognōv-ī	cognit-um	cognosc-ere	*recognise*
Cōg-ō	coēg-ī	coact-um	cog-ere	*compel*
Collig-ō	collēg-ī	collect-um	collig-ere	*collect*
Col-ō	colu-ī	cult-um	col-ere	*till, cultivate*
Cōm-ō	comps-ī	compt-um	com-ere	*deck*
Comper-iō	comper-ī	compert-um	comper-īre	*learn*
Comping-ō	compēg-ī	compact-um	comping-ere	*fix together*
Compl-eō	complēv-ī	complēt-um	compl-ēre	*fill up*

Conc-iō	concīv-ī	concīt-um (concĭt-us, -a, -um)	conc-īre	*call together*
Concut-iō	concuss-ī	concuss-um	concut-ere	*shake violently*
Cond-ō	condid-ī	condit-um	cond-ere	*to found*
Confic-iō	confēc-ī	confect-um	confic-ere	*finish*
Confit-eor	confess-us sum	——	confit-ērī	*confess*
Congru-ō	congru-ī	——	congru-ere	*agree*
Conser-ō	consēv-ī	consit-um	conser-ere	*plant (with something)*
Conser-ō	conseru-i	consert-um	conser-ere	*to knit together*
Conspic-iō	conspex-ī	conspect-um	conspic-ere	*behold*
Constitu-ō	constitu-ī	constitūt-um	constitu-ere	*resolve*
Const-ō	constit-ī	——	const-āre	*consist*
Consul-ō	consulu-ī	consult-um	consul-ere	*consult*
Contemn-ō	contemps-ī	contempt-um	contemn-ere	*despise*
Coqu-ō	cox-ī	coct-um	coqu-ere	*cook*
Corrig-ō	correx-ī	correct-um	corrig-ere	*correct*
Crēd-ō	crēdid-ī	crēdit-um	crēd-ere	*believe*
Crep-ō	crepu-ī	crepit-um	crep-āre	*creak*
Cresc-ō	crēv-ī	crēt-um	cresc-ere	*grow* (intrs.)
Cub-ō	cubu-ī	cubit-um	cub-āre	*lie down*
Cūd-o	cūd-ī	cūs-um	cūd-ere	*forge*
Cupi-ō	cupīv-ī	cupīt-um	cup-ere	*desire*
Curr-ō	cucurr-ī	curs-um	curr-ere	*run*

D

Dēdic-o	dēdicāv-ī	dēdicāt-um	dēdic-āre	*dedicate*
Dēfend-ō	dēfend-ī	dēfens-um	dēfend-ere	*defend*
Dēl-eō	dēlēv-ī	dēlēt-um	dēl-ēre	*destroy*
Dēlig-ō	dēlēg-ī	dēlēct-um	dēlig-ere	*choose out*
Dēm-ō	demps-ī	dempt-um	dēm-ere	*take away*
Dēsil-iō	dēsilu-ī	dēsult-um	dēsil-īre	*leap down*
Dīc-ō	dix-ī	dict-um	dīc-ere	*say*
Dīlig-ō	dīlex-ī	dīlect-um	dīlig-ere	*love*
Dīrip-iō	dīripu-ī	dīrept-um	dīrip-ere	*plunder*
Disc-ō	didic-ī	——	disc-ere	*learn*
Dīvid-ō	dīvīs-ī	dīvīs-um	dīvid-ere	*divide*
D-ō	ded-ī	dat-um	d-ăre	*give*

Doc-eō	docu-ī	doct-um	doc-ēre	*teach*
Dom-ō	domu-ī	domit-um	dom-āre	*tame, subdue*
Dūc-ō	dux-ī	duct-um	dūc-ere	*lead*

E

Ed-ō	ēd-ī	ēs-um	ed-ere	*eat*
Ed-ō	ēdid-ī	ēdit-um	ēd-ere	*give out*
Educ-ō	ēducāv-ī	ēducāt-um	ēduc-āre	*educate*
Edūc-o	ēdux-ī	ēduct-um	ēdūc-ere	*lead out*
Eg-eō	egu-ī	——	eg-ēre	*need* (Abl. case)
Elic-iō	ēlicu-ī	ēlicit-um	ēlic-ere	*lure out*
Em-ō	ēm-ī	empt-um	em-ere	*buy*
Evād-ō	ēvās-ī	ēvās-um	ēvād-ere	*go out*
Exc-iō	excīv-ī	excīt-um	exc-īre	*call forth*
Expergisc-or	experrect-us sum	——	expergisc-ī	*wake up* (intrs.)
Exper-ior	expert-us sum	——	exper-īrī	*try*
Extingu-ō	exstinx-ī	exstinct-um	exstinguere	*extinguish*
Exu-ō	exu-ī	exūt-um	exu-ere	*strip off*

F

Facess-ō	facessīv-ī	facessīt-um	facess-ere	*do eagerly*
Fac-iō	fēc-ī	fact-um	fac-ere	*make*
Fall-ō	fefell-ī	fals-um	fall-ere	*deceive*
Fat-eor	fass-us sum	——	fat-ērī	*confess*
Fav-eō	fāv-ī	faut-um	fav-ēre	*be favourable*
Fer-iō	——	——	fer-īre	*strike*
Ferv-eō	ferv-ī, ferbu-ī	——	ferv-ēre	*boil*
Fīd-ō	fīs-us sum	——	fīd-ere	*trust*
Fīg-ō	fix-ī	fix-um	fīg-ere	*fix*
Find-ō	fid-ī	fiss-um	find-ere	*split*
Fing-ō	finx-ī	fict-um	fing-ere	*form*
Flect-ō	flex-ī	flex-um	flect-ere	*bend*
Fl-eō	flēv-ī	flēt-um	fl-ēre	*weep*
Flōr-eō	flōru-ī	——	flōr-ēre	*flourish*
Flu-ō	flux-ī	flux-um	flu-ere	*flow*
Fod-iō	fōd-ī	foss-um	fod-ere	*dig*
Fov-eō	fōv-ī	fōt-um	fov-ēre	*cherish*

Frang-ō	frēg-ī	fract-um	frang-ere	*break*
Frem-ō	fremu-ī	fremit-um	frem-ere	*growl*
Frīg-eō	frix-ī	——	frīg-ēre	*be cold*
Fru-or	fruct-us *or* fruit-us sum	——	fru-ī	*enjoy*
Fug-iō	fūg-ī	fugit-um	fug-ere	*flee*
Fulc-iō	fuls-ī	fult-um	fulc-īre	*prop up*
Fulg-eō	fuls-ī	——	fulg-ēre	*glitter*
Fund-ō	fūd-ī	fūs-um	fund-ere	*rout*
Fung-or	funct-us sum	——	fung-ī	*discharge*
		G		
Gaud-eō	gāvīs-us sum	——	gaud-ēre	*rejoice*
Gem-ō	gemu-ī	gemit-um	gem-ere	*sigh, groan*
Ger-ō	gess-ī	gest-um	ger-ere	*carry, wear*
Gign-ō	genu-ī	genit-um	gign-ere	*beget*
Grad-ior	gress-us sum	——	grad-ī	*step*
		H		
Haer-eō	haes-ī	haes-um	haer-ēre	*stick*
Haur-iō	haus-ī	haust-um	haur-īre	*drain*
Horr-eō	horru-ī	——	horr-ēre	*shudder*
		I		
Iac-iō[1]	iĕc-i	iact-um	iac-ere	*throw*
Ic-ō	īc-ī	ict-um	īc-ere	*strike*
Imbu-ō	imbu-ī	imbūt-um	imbu-ere	*wet slightly*
Inclūd-ō	inclūs-ī	inclūs-um	inclūd-ere	*shut in*
Incumb-ō	incubu-ī	incubit-um	incumb-ere	*lie upon*
Indic-ō	indicāv-ī	indicāt-um	indic-āre	*indicate*
Indīc-ō	indix-ī	indict-um	indīc-ere	*announce*
Ind-ō	indid-ī	indit-um	ind-ere	*put upon*
Indulg-eō	induls-ī	indult-um	indulg-ēre	*be indulgent*
Indu-ō	indu-ī	indūt-um	indu-ere	*put on*
Intelleg-ō	intellex-ī	intellect-um	intelleg-ere	*understand*
Irasc-or	——	——	īrasc-ī	*become angry*
Iub-eō	iuss-ī	iuss-um	iub-ēre	*command*
Iung-ō	iunx-ī	iunct-um	iung-ere	*join*
Iuv-ō	iūv-ī	iūtum	iuv-āre	*aid*

[1] Compounds either *conjicio, disjicio, injicio,* or *conicio, disicio, inicio.*

		L		
Lāb-or	laps-us sum	——	lāb-ī	*glide*
Lacess-ō	lacessiv-ī	lacessīt-um	lacess-ere	*provoke*
Laed-ō	laes-ī	laes-um	laed-ere	*wound*
Lat-eō	latu-ī	——	lat-ēre	*lie hidden*
Lav-ō	lāv-ī	laut-um, lōt-um, lavāt-um	lav-āre	*wash*
Leg-ō	lēg-ī	lect-um	leg-ere	*read, choose*
Lin-ō	lēv-ī	lit-um	lin-ere	*smear*
Loqu-or	locūt-us sum	——	loqu-ī	*speak*
Lūce-ō	lux-ī	——	lūc-ēre	*shine*
Lūd-ō	lūs-ī	lūs-um	lūd-ere	*play*
Lūge-ō	lux-ī	——	lūg-ēre	*mourn*
		M		
Mand-ō	mand-ī	mans-um	mand-ere	*chew*
Man-eō	mans-ī	mans-um	man-ēre	*remain*
Merg-ō	mers-ī	mers-um	merg-ere	*dip*
Mēt-ior	mens-us sum	——	mēt-īrī	*measure*
Met-ō	——	mess-um	met-ere	*reap*
Metu-ō	metu-ī	——	metu-ere	*fear*
Mic-ō	micu-ī	——	mic-āre	*glitter*
Minu-ō	minu-ī	minūt-um	minu-ere	*lessen*
Misc-eō	miscu-ī	mixt-um	misc-ēre	*mix*
Mitt-ō	mīs-ī	miss-um	mitt-ere	*send*
Mord-eō	momord-ī	mors-um	mord-ēre	*bite*
Mor-ior	mortu-us sum	——	mor-ī	*die*
Mov-eō	mōv-ī	mōt-um	mov-ēre	*move*
Mulc-eō	muls-ī	muls-um	mulc-ēre	*soothe*
		N		
Nancisc-or	nact-us *or* nanct-us sum	——	nancisc-ī	*obtain*
Nasc-or	nāt-us sum	——	nasc-ī	*be born*
Nect-ō	nex-ī, nexu-ī	nex-um	nect-ere	*bind*
Negleg-ō	neglex-ī	neglect-um	negleg-ere	*neglect*
Ning-ō	ninx-ī	——	ning-ere	*snow*
Nit-eō	nitu-ī	——	nit-ēre	*shine*
Nīt-or	nīsus *or* nix-us sum	——	nīt-ī	*lean*
Nosc-ō	nōv-ī	nōt-um	nosc-ere	*get to know*
Nūb-ō	nups-ī	nupt-um	nūb-ere	*marry*

O

Oblīvisc-or	oblīt-us sum	——	oblīvisc-ī	*forget*
Obsid-eō	obsēd-ī	obsess-um	obsid-ēre	*besiege*
Obst-ō	obstit-ī	——	obst-āre	*oppose*
Occid-ō	occid-ī	occās-um	occid-ere	*fall, set (of the sun)*
Occīd-ō	occīd-ī	occīs-um	occīd-ere	*slay*
Occul-ō	occulu-ī	occult-um	occul-ere	*hide*
Ol-eō	olu-ī	——	ol-ēre	*smell*
Oper-iō	operu-ī	opert-um	oper-īre	*cover*
Opprim-ō	oppress-ī	oppress-um	opprim-ere	*surprise, overwhelm*
Ord-ior	ors-us sum	——	ord-īrī	*commence*
Or-ior	ort-us sum	——	or-īrī	*rise*

P

Pacisc-or	pact-us sum	——	pacisc-ī	*bargain for*
Pall-eō	pallu-ī	——	pall-ēre	*be pale*
Pand-ō	pand-ī	pass-um	pand-ere	*spread out*
Pang-ō	panx-ī	panct-um	pang-ere	*fix*
Pang-ō	pepig-ī	pact-um	pang-ere	*fix, settle*
Parc-ō	peperc-ī	pars-um	parc-ere	*spare*
Par-iō	peper-ī	part-um	par-ere	*bring forth*
Pasc-ō	pāv-ī	past-um	pasc-ere	*feed* (trans.)
Pasc-or	past-us sum	——	pasc-ī	*feed* (intrans.)
Pat-eō	patu-ī	——	pat-ēre	*lie open*
Pat-ior	pass-us sum	——	pat-ī	*suffer*
Pav-eō	pāv-ī	——	pav-ēre	*fear*
Pect-ō	pex-ī	pex-um	pect-ere	*comb*
Pell-ō	pepul-ī	puls-um	pell-ere	*push*
Pend-eō	pepend-ī	pens-um	pend-ēre	*hang* (intrans.)
Pend-ō	pepend-ī	pens-um	pend-ere	*weigh, hang* (trans.)
Percell-ō	percul-ī	perculs-um	percell-ere	*cast down*
Perd-ō	perdid-ī	perdit-um	perd-ere	*destroy, lose*
Perg-ō	perrex-ī	perrect-um	perg-ere	*go on, proceed*
Pet-ō	petīv-ī	petīt-um	pet-ere	*ask*
Ping-ō	pinx-ī	pict-um	ping-ere	*paint*

Plaud-ō	plaus-ī	plaus-um	plaud-ere	*clap, applaud*
Plect-ō	plex-ī, plexu-ī	plex-um	plect-ere	*plait*
Plu-it	plu-it	——	plu-ere	*it rains*
Pōn-ō	posu-ī	posit-um	pōn-ere	*place, put*
Posc-ō	poposc-ī	——	posc-ere	*demand*
Possid-eō	possēd-ī	possess-um	possid-ēre	*possess*
Pōt-ō	pōtāv-ī	pōt-um (potātum)	pōt-āre	*drink*
Prand-eō	prand-ī	prans-um	prand-ēre	*breakfast*
Prehend-ō	prehend-ī	prehens-um	prehend-ere	*seize*
Prem-ō	press-ī	press-um	prem-ere	*press*
Prōd-ō	prōdid-ī	prōdit-um	prōd-ere	*betray*
Proficisc-or	profect-us sum	——	proficisc-ī	*set out*
Prōflīg-ō	prōflīgāv-ī	prōflīgāt-um	prōflīg-āre	*dash down*
Prōm-ō	promps-ī	prompt-um	prōm-ere	*bring forth*

Q

Quaer-ō	quaesīv-ī	quaesīt-um	quaer-ere	*ask (a question)*
Quat-iō	(quass-ī)	quass-um	quat-ere	*shake*
Quer-or	quest-us sum	——	quer-ī	*complain*
Quiesc-ō	quiēv-ī	quiēt-um	quiesc-ere	*rest*

R

Rād-ō	rās-ī	rās-um	rād-ere	*scrape*
Rap-iō	rapu-ī	rapt-um	rap-ere	*snatch*
Recip-iō	recēp-ī	recept-um	recip-ere	*recover*
Redd-ō	reddid-ī	reddit-um	redd-ere	*give back*
Refer-ō	rettul-ī	relāt-um	refer-re	*bring back*
Relinqu-ō	relīqu-ī	relict-um	relinqu-ere	*leave*
Reminisc-or	——	——	reminisc-ī	*remember*
R-eor	rat-us sum	——	r-ērī	*think*
Repell-ō	reppul-ī	repuls-um	repell-ere	*thrust back*
Reper-iō	repper-ī	repert-um	reper-īre	*find*
Rēp-ō	reps-ī	rept-um	rēp-ere	*crawl*
Requīr-ō	requīsīv-ī	requīsīt-um	requīr-ere	*be in want of*
Respond-eō	respond-ī	respons-um	respond-ēre	*answer*
Retin-eō	retinu-ī	retent-um	retin-ēre	*hold back*
Rīd-eō	rīs-ī	rīs-um	rīd-ēre	*laugh*

Rig-eō	rigu-ī	——	rig-ēre	*be stiff*
Rōd-ō	rōs-ī	rōs-um	rōd-ere	*gnaw*
Rub-eō	rubu-ī	——	rub-ēre	*blush*
Rump-ō	rūp-ī	rupt-um	rump-ere	*burst*
Ru-ō	ru-ī	rut-um	ru-ere	*fall*

S

Saep-iō	saeps-ī	saept-um	saep-īre	*fence round*
Sal-iō	salu-ī	salt-um	sal-īre	*leap*
Sanc-iō	sanx-ī	sanct-um	sanc-īre	*ratify*
Sap-iō	sapīv-ī	——	sap-ere	*be wise*
Sarc-iō	sars-ī	sart-um	sarc-īre	*patch*
Scand-ō	scand-ī	scans-um	scand-ere	*climb*
Scind-ō	scid-ī	sciss-um	scind-ere	*tear*
Scrīb-ō	scrips-ī	script-um	scrīb-ere	*write*
Sculp-ō	sculps-ī	sculpt-um	sculp-ere	*engrave*
Sec-ō	secu-ī	sect-um	sec-āre	*cut*
Sed-eō	sēd-ī	sess-um	sed-ēre	*sit*
Sent-iō	sens-ī	sens-um	sent-īre	*feel*
Sepel-iō	sepelīv-ī	sepult-um	sepel-īre	*bury*
Sequ-or	secūt-us sum	——	sequ-ī	*follow*
Ser-ō	sēv-ī	sat-um	ser-ere	*sow*
Ser-ō	seru-ī	sert-um	ser-ere	*knit, plait*
Serp-ō	serps-ī	serpt-um	serp-ere	*crawl*
Sil-eō	silu-ī	——	sil-ēre	*be silent*
Sin-ō	sīv-ī	sit-um	sin-ere	*permit*
Sol-eō	solit-us sum	——	sol-ēre	*be wont*
Solv-ō	solv-ī	solūt-um	solv-ere	*loosen*
Son-ō	sonu-ī	sonit-um	son-āre	*sound*
Sparg-ō	spars-ī	spars-um	sparg-ere	*scatter*
Spern-ō	sprēv-ī	sprēt-um	spern-ere	*spurn*
Spond-eō	spopond-ī	spons-um	spond-ēre	*pledge, promise*
Statu-ō	statu-ī	statūt-um	statu-ere	*set up, resolve*
Stern-ō	strāv-ī	strāt-um	stern-ere	*strew*
St-ō	stet-ī	stat-um	st-āre	*stand*
Strep-ō	strepu-ī	strepit-um	strep-ere	*make a noise*
Strīd-eō	strid-ī	——	strīd-ēre	*hiss, creak*
String-ō	strinx-ī	strict-um	string-ere	*strip*

Stru-ō	strux-ī	struct-um	stru-ere	*build*
Stud-eō	studu-ī	——	stud-ēre	*be zealous*
Stup-eō	stupu-ī	——	stup-ēre	*be stunned, dazed*
Suād-eō	suās-ī	suās-um	suād-ēre	*advise*
Subd-ō	subdid-ī	subdit-um	subd-ere	*put beneath*
Suesc-ō	suēv-ī	suēt-um	suesc-ere	*be accustomed*
Sūm-ō	sumps-ī	sumpt-um	sūm-ere	*take up*
Surg-ō	surrex-ī	surrect-um	surg-ere	*rise up*

T

Tang-ō	tetig-ī	tact-um	tang-ere	*touch*
Teg-ō	tex-ī	tect-um	teg-ere	*cover*
Tend-ō	tetend-ī	tent-um, tens-um	tend-ere	*stretch*
Ten-eō	tenu-ī	tent-um	ten-ēre	*hold*
Terg-eō	ters-ī	ters-um	terg-ēre	*wipe*
Ter-ō	trīv-ī	trīt-um	ter-ere	*rub*
Tex-ō	texu-ī	text-um	tex-ere	*weave*
Tim-eō	timu-ī	——	tim-ēre	*fear*
Ting-ō	tinx-ī	tinct-um	ting-ere	*dip*
Toll-ō	sustul-ī	sublāt-um	toll-ere	*lift, take away*
Tond-eō	totond-ī	tons-um	tond-ēre	*shear*
Ton-ō	tonu-ī	——	ton-āre	*thunder*
Torqu-eō	tors-ī	tort-um	torqu-ēre	*twist*
Torr-eō	torru-ī	tost-um	torr-ēre	*roast*
Trād-ō	trādid-ī	trādit-um	trad-ere	*hand down*
Trah-ō	trax-ī	tract-um	trah-ere	*drag*
Trem-ō	tremu-ī	——	trem-ere	*tremble*
Tribu-ō	tribu-ī	tribūt-um	tribu-ere	*assign*
Trūd-o	trūs-ī	trūs-um	trūd-ere	*thrust*
Tund-ō	tutud-ī	tuns-um, tūs-um	tund-ere	*thump*
Turg-eō	turs-ī	——	turg-ēre	*swell*

U

Ulcisc-or	ult-us sum	——	ulcisc-ī	*avenge*
Ung-ō	unx-ī	unct-um	ung-ere	*anoint*

Urg-eō	urs-ī	——	urg-ēre	*urge*
Ur-ō	uss-ī	ust-um	ūr-ere	*burn* (trans.)
Ut-or	ūs-us sum	——	ūt-ī	*use*

V

Veh-ō	vex-ī	vect-um	veh-ere	*carry*
Vell-ō	vell-ī	vuls-um	vell-ere	*pluck*
Vend-ō	vendid-ī	vendit-um	vend-ere	*sell*
Ven-iō	vēn-ī	vent-um	ven-īre	*come*
Verr-ō	verr-ī	vers-um	verr-ere	*sweep*
Vert-ō	vert-ī	vers-um	vert-ere	*turn*
Vesc-or	——	——	vesc-ī	*feed*
Vet-ō	vetu-ī	vetit-um	vet-āre	*forbid*
Vid-eō	vīd-ī	vīs-um	vid-ēre	*see*
Vig-eō	vigu-ī	——	vig-ēre	*thrive*
Vinc-iō	vinx-ī	vinct-um	vinc-īre	*bind*
Vinc-ō	vīc-ī	vict-um	vinc-ere	*conquer*
Vīs-ō	vīs-ī	(vīs-um)	vīs-ere	*visit*
Vīv-ō	vix-ī	vict-um	vīv-ere	*live*
Volv-ō	volv-ī	volūt-um	volv-ere	*roll*
Vom-ō	vomu-ī	vomit-um	vom-ere	*vomit*
Vov-eō	vōv-ī	vōt-um	vov-ēre	*vow*

VOCABULARY.

You will probably find the verbs more quickly in the Table, but they are not all there. The Compound verbs are not given at all in the Table. Further, the Vocabulary as a rule gives the meaning most useful in this book.

A

A, ab (prep., with Abl. case)...by, from
Abaliēn-ō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre...to estrange, to alienate
Ab-iciō, -iēci, -iectum, -icere...to cast away (or *ab-jicio, -jeci*, etc.)
Absens, -sentis...absent
Absum, āfuī, abesse...to be absent, to be away from
Ac, atque (conj., *āc* used before consonants only)...and
Accēdō, -cessī, -cessum, -cēdere...to approach (to go to)
Accidō, -cidī, -cidere...to happen
Accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptum, -cipere...to receive
Acer, ācris, ācre (adj.)...sharp, keen. *Acrius* (adv.)...more keenly. *Acriter* (adv.)...keenly, fiercely
Aciēs -ēī, f....line of battle, battle
Acquiescō, -quiēvī, -quiētum, -quiescere...to rest, to die
Ad (prep., with Accus.)...to, towards
Addūcō, -duxī, -ductum, -dūcere...to lead to, bring to
Adeō, -iī, -ĭtum, -īre...to go to, to approach
Adeo (adv.)...so
Adficiō. See *Afficiō*
Adhuc (adv.)...up till now, hitherto
Adjungō, -junxī, -junctum, -jungere...to join to, to unite
Admodum (adv.)...quite, very
Adorior, -ortus sum, -orīrī (deponent verb)...to attack
Adstō, -stitī, ——, -stāre...to stand by. *Adstantēs*...bystanders
Adsum, -fuī, -esse...to be present
Adveniō, -vēnī, -ventum, -venīre...to arrive, to come to
Adventus, -ūs, m....arrival

NOTE.—Quantity is marked only where serious mistakes are likely to be made.

Adversārius, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...opposed, hostile; (noun) enemy, opponent
Adversus (prep., with Accus.)...against
Aedificium, *-iī*, n....building
Aedificō, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *-āre*...to build
Aegātēs, *-um*, f....the Aegates Islands
Aemilius, *-iī*, m....Aemilius (name of a famous Roman family)
Aeque (adv.)...equally
Aerārium, *-iī*, n....treasury
Aestimō, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *-āre*...to value
Aetās, *aetātis*, f....age, time of life, time
Afferō, *attulī*, *allātum*, *afferre*...to bring to
Afficiō, *-fēcī*, *-fectum*, *-ficere*...to affect. *Morbō afficere*, to afflict with disease
Affirmō, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *-āre*...to assert
Africa, *-ae*, f....Africa
Ager, *agrī*, m....field; (plur.) territory
Agitō, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *-āre*...to keep moving. *Mente agitare*, to ponder
Agō, *ēgī*, *actum*, *agere*...to do, to drive
Aliās (adv.)...at another time. *Saepe alias*...on many other occasions
Aliēnus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...belonging to another
Aliquī, *aliqua*, *aliquod* (adj.)...some. Declined like *quī*, *quae*, *quod*; neut. plur. *aliqua*
Aliquis, m. and f., *aliquid*, n....someone, something
Aliquot (adj., indeclinable)...several
Aliter (adv.)...otherwise
Alius, *-a*, *-ud*...other. *Aliī . . . aliī*...some . . . others
Alpēs, *-ium*, f....the Alps
Alpicus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...Alpine. *Alpicī*, *-ōrum*, m....the inhabitants of the Alps
Alter, *-a*, *-um*...one of two; second. *Alter . . . alter*, the one . . . the other
Altus, *-a*, *-um*...lofty, deep
Amīcē (adv.)...in a friendly manner
Amīcitia, *-ae*, f....friendship
Amīcus, *-i*, m....friend
Amittō, *-mīsī*, *-missum*, *-mittere*...to lose
Amor, *-ōris*, m....love
Amphora, *-ae*, f....jar
Amplius (adv.)...more

An. See Chapter on Questions
Angustiae, -arum, f....straits, narrowness
Anima, -ae, f....the soul, life
Animus, -i, m....the mind (as the seat of the emotions; *mens, mentis*, f....more the intellect)
Annus, -i, m....year
Ante (prep., with Accus.)...before
Antea (adv.)...before that, before
Antecedo, -cessi, -cessum, -cedere...to go before
Antiochus, -i, m....Antiochus
Appareo, -parui, -paritum, -parēre...to come in sight, to be plain
Apparo, -avi, -atum, -are...to prepare
Appello, -avi, -atum, -are...to call
Apud (prep., with Accus.)...near, at (of places); in the presence of (of persons)
Apulia, -ae, f....Apulia, a district of Italy
Ara, -ae, f....altar
Arbitrium, -ii, n....judgment, bidding, decision
Arbitror, -atus sum, -ari...to think, to believe
Argentum, -i, n....silver
Arma, -orum, n. pl....arms
Armo, -avi, -atum, -are...to arm, to equip. *Armati*, armed men.
Ascendo, -scendi, -scensum, -scendere...to climb. *Ascendere navem*, to take ship, to embark
Assiduus, -a, -um (adj.)...continuous, perpetual
At (conj.)...but, but yet
Athenae, -arum, f. pl....Athens, the capital of Greece
Athenienses, -ium, pl....the Athenians.
Atheniensis, -is, -e (adj.)...Athenian
Atque (conj.)...and
Auctumnus, -i, m....autumn
Audeo, ausus sum, audere...to dare, to venture
Audio, -ivi, -itum, -ire...to hear
Aurelius, -ii, m....Aurelius (name of a Roman family)
Aureus, -a, -um (adj.)...golden
Aurum, -i, n....gold
Aut (conj.), or. *Aut . . . aut*, either . . . or
Autem (conj.)...but, however
Auxilium, -ii, n....aid
Avaritia, -ae, f....avarice, greed

B

Barbarus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...barbarian; (as noun) a Barbarian
Barca, *-ae*, m....Barca, the surname of Hamilcar
Bellicosus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...warlike; *bellicosissimus* (superl.), very warlike
Bello, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to wage war
Bellum, *-i*, n....war
Bene (adv.)...well
Biduum, *-i*, n....a space of two days; *biduo* (abl.), within two days
Bini, *-ae*, *-a* (distrib. adj.)...two each
Bonus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...good. *Bona*, *-orum*, n. pl....goods
Brevis, *-is*, *-e* (adj.)...short. *Brevi* (adv.)...in a short time
Britanni, *-orum*, m. pl....Britons

C

Caduceus, *-i*, m....herald's wand
Caesar, *-is*, m....Cæsar, a famous Roman
Caius, *-i*, m....Caius, a Roman name
Calamitas, *-tatis*, f....disaster
Callidus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...skilful, cunning
Campus, *-i*, m....plain
Canis, *-is*, m....dog. Gen. pl. *canum*
Cannensis, *-is*, *-e* (adj.)...of Cannae
Caper, *-ri*, m....goat
Capio, *cēpi*, *captum*, *capĕre*...to take
Capitolium, *-ii*, n....the Capitol (a famous building in Rome)
Captīvus, *-i*, m....a captive
Capua, *-ae*, f....Capua, a town in Italy
Carthaginiensis, *-is*, *-e* (adj.)...Carthaginian
Carthāgo, *-inis*, f....Carthage
Carus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...dear
Castellum, *-i*, n....fort
Castrum, *-i*, n....fort. *Castra*, *-orum*, n. pl....a camp
Casus, *-us*, m....chance, accident, calamity
Cato, *-onis*, m....Cato, a Roman name
Catulus, *-i*, m....Catulus, a Roman name
Causa, *-ae*, f....cause, reason
Cedo, *cessi*, *cessum*, *cedere*...(1) to yield (with Dative); (2) to go from (with Abl.)

Celeriter (adv.)...quickly
Celo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to conceal
Ceno, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to dine
Centenius, *-ii*, m....Centenius, a Roman name
Centum (adj., indeclinable)...one hundred
Ceteri, *-ae*, *-a* (adj.)...the rest, the others. (The singular is rare)
Circumdo, *-dĕdi*, *-dătum*, *-dăre*...to surround
Circumeo, *-ivi*, *-itum*, *-ire*...to go round (*circum* and *eo*)
Circumvenio, *-vēni*, *-ventum*, *-venire*...to surround
Civis, *-is*, m....citizen
Civitas, *-tatis*, f....state
Clam (adv.)...secretly
Clandestinus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...secret
Classiarius, *-ii*, m....a marine
Classis, *-is*, f....fleet
Clastidium, *-ii*, n....Clastidium, a town near the Po
Claudo, *clausi*, *clausum*, *claudĕre*...to shut
Cnaeus, *-i*, m....Cnaeus, a Roman name
Coelum, *-i*, n....the sky
Coepi, *-isse*...to begin. (Perfect form with present meaning, found only in perfect and tenses derived from it)
Cogito, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to think
Cognomen, *-inis*, n....surname
Cognosco, *-novi*, *-nitum*, *-noscere*...to discover, to learn, to know
Cogo, *coēgi*, *coactum*, *cogere*, to compel
Cohortatio, *-ōnis*, f....exhortation
Collēga, *-ae*, m....colleague
Colligo, *-lēgi*, *-lectum*, *-ligĕre*...to collect, to gather
Colloco, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to place, to station
Colloquium, *-ii*, n....conversation, parley
Commemoro, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to recount, to tell
Committo, *-mīsi*, *-missum*, *-mittere proelium*...to join battle
Comparo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to prepare, to get ready
Compello, *-puli*, *-pulsum*, *-pellere*...to drive, to force, to compel
Comperio, *-peri*, *-pertum*, *-perire*...to ascertain, to find out
Compleo, *-evi*, *-etum*, *-ēre*...to fill
Complures, *-ia* (and *complura*), gen. *-ium*...several
Compono, *-posui*, *-positum*, *-ponere*...to settle, to conclude (*bellum*, a war)
Comprehendo, *-di*, *-sum*, *-dere*...to seize
Comprobo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to approve of, to sanction

Concido, -cīdi, -cīsum, -cīdĕre...to destroy
Concilio, -avi, -atum, -are ..to win over. *Conciliare pacem*, to make peace
Concito, -avi, -atum, -are...to stir up, to rouse
Concurro, -curri, -cursum, -currĕre...to run together, to meet
Concursus, -us, m....meeting, attack
Condicio, -ōnis, f....condition; (pl.) terms
Conficio, -fēci, -fectum, -ficĕre...to finish
Confirmo, -avi, -ātum, -are...to ratify, to make strong
Confligo, -flixi, -flictum, -fligĕre...to engage in battle, to contend
Congredior, -gressus, -gredi...to come together, to engage in battle
Conicio, -ieci, -iectum, -icĕre...to throw, to hurl
Conor, -atus, -ari...to attempt
Consequor, -secutus, -sequi...to obtain, to get
Consero, -serui, -sertum, -serere...to knit together. *Manum conserere*, to join battle
Conservo, -avi, -atum, -are...to preserve
Considero, -avi, -atum, -are...to consider, to deliberate
Consilium, -ii, n....plan, advice, counsel
Conspicio, -spexi, -spectum, -spicĕre...to behold
Constituo, -ui, -utum, -uĕre...to construct, to establish, to resolve (with Infinitive)
Consuesco, -suēvi, -suetum, -suescere...to become accustomed; (perf.) to be wont
Consuetudo, -inis, f....custom
Consul, -is, m....consul (chief magistrate of Rome)
Consulāris, -is, m....ex-consul
consultum, Senatus-, a decree of the Senate
Contentus, -a, -um (adj.)...contented
Contineo, -tinui, -tentum, -tinere...to keep together
Contra (adv.)...on the contrary; (prep., with Accus.) against
Contraho, -traxi, -tractum, -trahere...to draw together, to gather
contrario, E (adverbial phrase)...on the contrary
Convenio, -veni, -ventum, -venire...to come together. *Condiciones non convenerunt*, terms were not agreed on
Convoco, -avi, -atum, -are...to summon, to call together
Copia, -ae, f....abundance. *Copiae, -arum*, pl....supplies, forces
Cornelius, -ii, m....Cornelius, a Roman name
Cornu, -us, n....horn; (of an army) wing
Corōna, -ae, f....garland, crown
Corpus, -ŏris, n....the body

Corrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, -rumpere...to destroy, to bribe
Cras (adv.)...to-morrow
Credo, credidi, creditum, credĕre...to believe (with Dative of person)
Creo, -avi, -atum, -are...to appoint
Creta, -ae, f....Crete, an island in the Mediterranean
Cretensis, -is, -e (adj.)...belonging to Crete; (m. pl.) Cretans
Cum (prep., with Abl.)...along with; (conj.) when; since
Cumae, -arum, f. pl....Cumae, town near Naples
Cunctus, -a, -um (adj.)...all
Cupiditas, -tatis, f....greed, desire
Cupio, -ivi, -itum, -ĕre...to desire
Cupressus, -i, f....cypress
Cur (adv.)...why; why?
Cura, -ae, f....care, anxiety
Cyrenaei, -orum, m. pl....Cyrenaeans, inhabitants of Cyrene, town in North of Africa

D

De (prep., with Abl.)...from, concerning
Debeo, -ui, -itum, -ēre...to owe; (with Infin.) ought: *Debet facere*, he ought to do
Debilito, -avi, -atum, -are...to weaken
Decedo, -cessi, -cessum, -cedere...to go from, to depart, to leave
Decem (num. adj.)...ten
Decerno, -crēvi, -crētum, -cernere...to contend in battle
Declaro, -avi, -atum, -are...to make plain
Dedecus, -ŏris, n....disgrace, dishonour
Dedo, dedidi, deditum, dedere...to surrender
Deduco, -duxi, -ductum, -ducere...to lead, to conduct
Defendo, -fendi, -fensum, -fendere...to defend
Defero, -tuli, -latum, -ferre...to bring to, to report
Deinde (adv.)...thereafter, then
Delectus, -us, m....levy (of troops)
Deleo, -evi, -etum, -ēre...to destroy, to blot out
Deligo, -legi, -lectum, -ligĕre...to choose out
Depono, -posui, -positum, -ponere...to lay down, to surrender
Descisco, -scīvi, -scītum, -sciscere...to revolt
Desero, -serui, -sertum, -serere...to desert
Desisto, -stiti, -stitum, -sistere... to cease, to desist from
Desperatio, -onis, f....despair
Despero, -avi, -atum, -are...to despair

Detrimentum, *-i*, n....loss

Deus, *-i*, m....a god or God. Voc. sing. *deus*, Nom. pl. *dei*, *dii*, *di*, Gen. pl. *deum*, *deorum*, Dat. and Abl. pl. *deis*, *diis*, *dis*, Acc. pl. *deos*

Devinco, *-vici*, *-victum*, *-vincere*...to utterly conquer

Dexter, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...right (that is on the right)

Diana, *-ae*, f....Diana, Roman goddess of hunting and of the Moon, etc.

Dico, *dixi*, *dictum*, *dicere*...to say

Dictator, *-oris*, m....dictator, a single magistrate appointed at Rome in times of danger with almost absolute power

Dies, *-ei*, m. or f. in sing., m. in pl....a day

Difficultas, *-tatis*, f....difficulty

Dilectus, *-us*, m....levy (of troops). See *Delectus*

Diligentia, *-ae*, f....diligence

Dimico, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to fight

Dimidium, *-ii*, n....half

Dimitto, *-mīsi*, *-missum*, *-mittere*...to let go, to send away, to give up

Discedo, *-cessi*, *-cessum*, *-cedere*...to depart

Disicio, *-ieci*, *-iectum*, *-icere*...to throw down

Dispalor, *-atus*, *-ari* (vb. deponent)...to wander about

Dissideo, *-sēdi*, *-sessum*, *-sidēre*...to differ, to disagree

Diu (adv.)...long; comparative *diutius*, longer; superlative *diutissime*, longest

Diuturnitas, *-tatis*, f....length (of time)

Divinus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...divine, inspired

Do, *dedi*, *datum*, *dare*...to give

Dolus, *-i*, m....craft, trick

Domesticus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...internal, civil (lit., belonging to the house)

Domus, *-us*, f....house. *Domum*, homeward. *Domi*, at home. *Domo*, from home

Dono, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to present, to gift, to give

Donum, *-i*, n....gift

dubie, *Haud* (adv.)...doubtless, without doubt

Dubito, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to doubt, to hesitate

Dubium, *-ii*, n....doubt (really neuter of following word)

Dubius, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...doubtful

Duco, *duxi*, *ductum*, *ducere*...to lead

Dum (conj.)...while; until

Duplex, *-icis* (adj.)...double, twofold

Durus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...hard
Dux, *ducis*, m. or f....leader, chief, general

E

E, *ex* (prep., with Abl.)...out of
Ea (adv.)...by that way (Abl. of *is*, *ea*, *id*)
Efficio, *effēci*, *effectum*, *efficĕre*...to bring to pass, to cause
Effugio, *effugi*, *effugitum*, *effugere*...to flee, to escape
Ego (pronoun)...I
Egredior, *egressus*, *egredi*...to go out
Elephantus, *-i*, m....elephant
Enim (conj.)...for (never first in the sentence)
Enumero, *-āvi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to number
Eo (adv.)...thither
Eo, *īvi*, *ĭtum*, *ire*...to go
Eodem (adv.)...to the same place. *Eodem unde*, to the same place whence
Epistola, *-ae*, f....letter
Eques, *-itis*, m....horseman; (pl.) cavalry
Equitatus, *-us*, m....cavalry
Equus, *-i*, m....horse
Erant (3rd plur., Imperf. Indic. of *sum*, *fui*, *esse*, to be)...they were
Erat (3rd sing., Imperf. Indic. of *sum*, *fui*, *esse*, to be)...he was
Erga (prep., with Accus.)...towards
Error, *-ōris*, m....mistake, error
Eryx, *-ycis*, m....Eryx, mountain in Sicily
Esse (Pres. Infin. of *sum*, *fui*, *esse*)...to be
Et (conj.)...and. *Et . . . et*, both . . . and
Etiam (adv.)...also, even. *Etiamtum* (adv.)...even then
Etruria, *-ae*, f....Etruria, district of Italy north of Rome
Etsi (conj.)...although
Eumenes, *-is*, m....Eumenes
Exardesco, *-arsi*, *-arsum*, *-ardescĕre*...to blaze out
Excedo, *-cessi*, *-cessum*, *-cedere*...to leave, to depart
Excieo or *-cio*, *-civi* or *-cii*, *-citum*, *-cīre*...to stir up, to rouse; to summon
Exerceo, *-ui*, *-itum*, *-ere*...to exercise, to stir up
Exercitus, *-us*, m....army
Exhaurio, *-hausi*, *-haustum*, *-haurire*...to empty, to exhaust
Existimo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to think, to consider

Exitus, *-us*, m....departure; death
Expedio, *-ivi*, *-itum*, *-ire*...to release, to set free
Expello, *-puli*, *-pulsum*, *-pellere*...to drive out
Experior, *-pertus*, *-periri* (vb. deponent)...to try, to attempt, to make trial of
Exploro, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to inquire, to find out
Exposco, *-poposci*, ——, *-poscere*...to ask earnestly, to implore
Expugno, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to take by storm, to storm
Extra (prep., with Accus.)...outside
Extrēmo (adv.)...at last
Extrēmus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...last, farthest
Exul, *-is*, m. or f....exile

F

Fabius, *-ii*, m....Fabius, a Roman name
Facile (adv.)...easily
Facilis, *-is*, *-e* (adj.)...easy
Facio, *fēci*, *factum*, *facere*...to do, to make
Factum, *-i*, n....deed
Facultas, *-tatis*, f....power; (pl.) resources
Falernus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...Falernian
Falsus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...false
Fama, *-ae*, f....report, reputation, glory
Fames, *-is*, f....hunger, famine
Femina, *-ae*, f....woman
Fera, *-ae*, f....wild beast
Fero, *tuli*, *latum*, *ferre*...to carry, to bring
Ferocia, *-ae*, f....boldness, ferocity
Ferociter (adv.)...boldly
Ferox, *-cis* (adj.)...bold, fierce
Ferrum, *-i*, n....iron
Festīno, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to hasten
Fictilis, *-is*, *-e* (adj.)...made of earthenware
Fidens, *-tis* (adj.)...confident. (Really Pres. Partic. of *fido*, *fisus*, *fidere*, to trust)
Fides, *-ei*, f....trust, good faith
Fiducia, *-ae*, f....confidence
Filia, *-ae*, f....daughter
Filius, *-ii*, m....son
Finis, *-is*, m....the end

Fio, factus sum, fieri...to be made, to become
Flagitium, -ii, n....disgraceful act, shame, disgrace
Flagro, -avi, -atum, -are...to blaze, to burn
Flamininus, -i, m....Flamininus, a Roman name
Flaminius, -ii, m....Flaminius, a Roman name
Foederatus, -a, -um (Partic. of *foedero*)...leagued together, allied
Foedus, -eris, n....a treaty
Folium, -ii, n....a leaf
Foris, -is, f. (usually in plural)...door, entrance
Formosus, -a, -um (adj.)...beautiful
Fors, fortis, f....chance. *Forte* (adv.)...by chance
Fortis, -is, -e (adj.)...brave
Fortitudo, -inis, f....bravery
Fortuito (adv.)...by chance
Fortūna, -ae, f....fortune
Frater, -ris, m....brother
Fregellae, -arum, f....Fregellae, town in Italy
Frustror, -atus, -ari...to baffle, to hoodwink
Fuga, -ae, f....flight
Fugo, -avi, -atum, -are...to put to flight
Fundamentum, -i, n....foundation
Furius, -ii, m....Furius, a Roman name

G

Gallia, -ae, f....Gaul, roughly what is now France
Gallus, -i, m....a Gaul
Geminus, -i, m....Geminus, a Roman name
Gens, gentis, f....race, family; nation, people
Genus, -eris, n....race, kind
Gero, gessi, gestum, gerĕre...to carry on, to wage (*bellum*, war)
Gortynii, -orum, m. pl....Gortynii, inhabitants of Gortyna in Crete
Graecia, -ae, f....Greece
Graius, -a, -um (adj.)...Graian
Gratia, -ae, f....favour, popularity. *Gratiae, -arum*, pl....thanks
Gravis, -is, -e (adj.)...heavy, severe
Guberno, -avi, -atum, -are...to govern

H

Habeo, -ui, -itum, -ere...to have, to hold; to consider
Habito, -avi, -atum, -are...to dwell, to inhabit
Hac (adv.)...by this way (Abl. fem. sing. of *hic*, with *via* understood)

Hadrumetum, *-i*, n....Hadrumetum, town on north coast of Africa
Hamilcar, *-aris*, m....Hamilcar
Hannibal, *-is*, m....Hannibal, son of the former
Hasdrubal, *-is*, m....Hasdrubal, son-in-law of Hamilcar
Haud (adv.) ..not. *Haud dubie*, doubtlessly
Hereditas, *-tatis*, f....inheritance
Hic (adv.)...here
Hic, *haec*, *hoc* (demons. pronoun)...this
Hiems, *-ĕmis*, f....winter
Hinc (adv.)...hence
Hippo, *-onis*, m....Hippo, a town in Africa
Hispania, *-ae*, f....Spain
Hispanus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...Spanish
Hoc, Acc. neut. sing. of *Hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, this
Hodie (adv.)...to-day
Hŏmo, *-inis*, m....man
Hortus, *-i*, m....garden
Hospitium, *-ii*, n....friendship
Hostia, *-ae*, f....victim for sacrifice
Hostis, *-is*, m....enemy
Huc (adv.)...hither
Hujus, Gen. sing. of *Hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, this
Hunc, Acc. masc. sing. of *Hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, this

I—J

[The most modern texts do not employ the letter "J" at all. "J" may be written for "I," however, before a vowel. In this vocabulary "I" is always used for "J".]

Iam (adv.)...now, already
Ianua, *-ae*, f....door
Ibi (adv.)...there
Idem, *eadem*, *idem* (pron.)...the same
Ideo (adv.)...for that reason
Igitur (conj.)...therefore
Ille, *-a*, *-ud* (pron.)...that
Illudo, *-si*, *-sum*, *-dĕre*...to mock
Illustris, *-is*, *-e* (adj.)...famous
Immitto, *-misi*, *-missum*, *-mittere*...to let loose at, to discharge against
Immolo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to offer up, to sacrifice
Imperātor, *-ōris*, m....commander-in-chief

Imperium, *-ii*, n....command, order; absolute authority
Impero, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to give orders, to order
Impetro, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to obtain a request
Imprudenter (adv.)...imprudently
In (prep.)...(with Abl.) in; (with Acc.) into, against
Incendo, *-cendi*, *-censum*, *-cendere*...to set on fire, to kindle
Incola, *-ae*, m. or f....an inhabitant
Inde (adv.)...thence; (of time) then
Indigeo, *-ui*, ——, *-ēre*...to have need of, to be in want of (with Gen. or Abl.)
Induco, *-duxi*, *-ductum*, *-ducere*...to lead into
Ineo, *-ii*, *-itum*, *-ire*...to enter, to go into
Infero, *intuli*, *illatum*, *inferre*...to carry into
Infestus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...hostile
Infitior, *-atus*, *-ari*...to deny
Ingens, *-gentis* (adj.)...huge
Inicio, *-ieci*, *-iectum*, *-icĕre*...to throw into or upon
Inimīcus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...unfriendly, hostile
Initium, *-ii*, n....beginning
Insciens, *-tis* (adj.)...unknowing, ignorant
Insidior, *-atus*, *-ari*...to waylay, to set an ambush
Inspicio, *-spexi*, *-spectum*, *-spicĕre*...to look into, to examine
Instituo, *-ui*, *-utum*, *-uĕre*...(with Inf.) to resolve, to determine, to begin
Insula, *-ae*, f....island
Intellego, *-exi*, *-ectum*, *-egĕre*...to understand. (Sometimes given *intelligo*)
Intentus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...eager, intent
Inter (prep., with Acc.)...between, among
Intereo, *-ii*, *-itum*, *-ire*...to die, to perish (*inter* and *eo*)
Interficio, *-feci*, *-fectum*, *-ficere*...to slay, to kill
Interim (adv.)...meanwhile
Interior, *-us* (adj., compar. degree)...inner
Intestīnus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...internal
Intra (prep., with Acc.)...inside, within
Inutilis, *-is*, *-e* (adj.)...useless
Invenio, *-veni*, *-ventum*, *-venire*...to come upon, to find
Invictus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...unconquered
Invideo, *-vidi*, *-visum*, *-videre*...to envy
Ira, *-ae*, f....anger
Irrideo, *-risi*, *-risum*, *-ridere*...to laugh at, to mock

Is, ea, id (pron.)...that, he
Ita (adv.)...so
Italia, -ae, f....Italy
Itaque (conj.)...and so, accordingly
Itemque (*item*, adv., also, and *-que*, and)...and also
Iter, itineris, n....way, road, journey
Iterum (adv.)...a second time, again
Iubeo, iussi, iussum, iubere...to order
Iudico, -avi, -atum, -are...to judge
Iupiter, Iovis (*Iovi, Iovem, Iove*)...Jupiter, chief Roman god
Iuro, -avi, -atum, -are...to swear
Ius, iuris, n....right, law, justice
Iusiurandum, iurisiurandi, n....an oath. (*Ius* and *iurandum*, each declined separately)
Iuvencus, -i, m....young bullock, steer

K

[This letter is occasionally used for C.]

Karthaginiensis, -is, -e (adj.)...Carthaginian; (pl.) the Carthaginians
Karthago, -inis, f....Carthage

L

Labor, -oris, m....toil, work, labour
Lacesso, -ivi, -itum, -ĕre...to provoke, to challenge
Largitio, -onis, f....bribery, largesses (gifts of money)
Lectīca, -ae, f....litter
Legātus, -i, m....ambassador; subordinate officer, lieutenant
Legio, -onis, f....legion
Lex, legis, f....law
Libenter (adv.)...readily
Ligures, -um, m....Ligurians, tribe in North of Italy
Litus, -oris, n....the shore
Locupleto, -avi, -atum, -are...to enrich
Locus, -i, m....a place, position. *Loca, -orum*, n. pl.
Longus, -a, -um (adj.)...long
Longus, -i, m....Longus, a Roman name
Lucanus, -a, -um...Lucanian, belonging to Lucania, a district of Italy
Lutatius, -ii, m....Lutatius, a Roman name
Lux, lucis, f....light

M

Maestitia, *-ae*, f....sadness
Maestus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...sorrowful
Magis (adv.)...more
Magister, *-ri*, m....master
Magistratus, *-us*, m....an officer of state (magistracy)
Magnopere (adv.)...greatly
Magnus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...great, large
Mago, *-onis*, m....Mago, a Carthaginian
Male (adv.)...badly
Malus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...bad. *Mala*, *-orum*, n. pl....ills
Manus, *-us*, f....hand; also a band (of men). *Manus dare*, to yield, to surrender. *Manus conserere*, to join battle
Marcellus, *-i*, m....Marcellus, a Roman name
Marcus, *-i*, m....Marcus, a Roman name
Mare, *-is*, n....the sea
Matrimonium, *-ii*, n....marriage
Maximus, *-a*, *-um* (superl. of *magnus*)...greatest
Meditor, *-atus*, *-ari*...to ponder, to consider
Mĕlĭta, *-ae*, f....Malta
Memor, *-is* (adj.)...mindful
Memoria, *-ae*, f....memory
Mens, *mentis*, f....the mind, the intellect, as opposed to *animus*, the mind as the seat of the feelings. *Mente agitare*, to ponder (to drive about in mind)
Mensis, *-is*, m....month
Mentio, *-onis*, f....mention
Mercenarius, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...hired, mercenary
Miles, *-itis*, m....soldier
Milia, *-ium* (Dat. and Abl. *milibus*)...thousands. *Mille*, a thousand
Minor, *-us* (adj., compar. of *parvus*)...less. *Natu minor*, younger (lit., less by birth)
Minucius, *-ii*, m....Minucius
Miror, *-atus*, *-ari*...to wonder at, to admire
Miser, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...wretched, miserable
Mitto, *mīsi*, *missum*, *mittere*...to send
Modo (adv.)...only
Modus, *-i*, m....measure, limit, manner
Mons, *montis*, m....mountain
Morbus, *-i*, m....disease

Moror, *-atus*, *-ari*...to delay
Mors, *mortis*, f....death
Mos, *moris*, m....custom; (pl.) manners, character
Mox (adv.)...soon
Mulier, *-is*, f....a woman
Multitudo, *-inis*, f....crowd, multitude, great number
Multo (adv.)...by much. *Multo post*, long after (lit., after by much)
Multus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...much, many
Munio, *-ivi*, *-itum*, *-ire*...to fortify. *Munire viam*, to make a road
Munus, *-eris*, n....a gift; an office
Murus, *-i*, m....a wall

N

Nam (conj.)...for
Namque (conj.)...for
Nascor, *natus*, *nasci*...to be born
Natio, *-onis*, f....nation, race
Naufragium, *-ii*, n....shipwreck
Nauta, *-ae*, m....sailor
Nauticus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...naval
Navalis, *-e* (adj.)...nautical, maritime
Navigatio, *-onis*, f....a sailing, a voyage
Navigo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to sail, to make a voyage
Navis, *-is*, f....ship
-nĕ, interrogative particle, attached to first word in questions (see Lesson XXVIII.)
Nē...in order that . . . not; lest. *Ne* . . . *quidem*...not even
Nego, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to deny, to say . . . not
Nemo, *nullius* (*neminem*, *nemini*, *nullo*)...no one
Neque...and not. *Neque* . . . *neque*...neither . . . nor
Neuter, *-ra*, *-rum* (adj.)...neither. (Gen. *neutrius*, etc.)
Nihil (neut. pron. indecl.)...nothing; (used as adv.) in no wise. *Nihilo secius*, no otherwise
Nisi (conj.)...unless. *Nisi cum*, save when
Noceo, *-ui*, *-itum*, *-ere*...to injure (governs Dative case)
Noctu (adv.)...by night
Nomen, *-inis*, n....name
Non (adv.)...not
Non solum . . . *sed etiam*...not only . . . but also
Nonus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...ninth
Novem (numeral adj.)...nine

Novus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...new
Nullus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...no, no one. (Gen. *nullius*, etc.)
Num (particle introducing an indirect question)...whether. (See Lesson XXVIII.)
Numerus, *-i*, m....number
Numida, *-ae*, m....a Numidian
Nunc (adv.)...now
Nunc tandem (adv.)...now at length
Nunquam (adv.)...never
Nuntio, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to announce, to bring a message
Nuntius, *-ii*, m....a messenger, a message

O

Ob (prep., with Acc.)...on account of, for the sake of
Obduco, *-duxi*, *-ductum*, *-ducĕre*...to draw over. *Obducta nocte*, night having been drawn over, that is, when night came on
Obicio, *-ieci*, *-iectum*, *-icĕre*...to throw in the way of (Dat. of person)
Obitus, *-us*, m....death
Obses, *-idis*, m....hostage
Obsideo, *-sedi*, *-sessum*, *-sidere*...to besiege, to blockade, to beset
Obtestatio, *-onis*, f....request, strong entreaty
Obtrectatio, *-onis*, f....envious detraction, disparagement
Obviam (adv.)...against (lit., in the way (to)). *Obviam ire*, to go in the way to a person, that is, to meet him
Occasio, *-onis*, f....chance, opportunity
Occido, *-cīdi*, *-cīsum*, *-cīdĕre*...to kill, to slay
Occupo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to seize, to get possession of
Oculus, *-i*, m....the eye
Odium, *-ii*, n....hatred
Omitto, *-misi*, *-missum*, *-mittere*...to let go. *Ut omittam*, to pass over (lit., that I may pass over)
Omnis, *-is*, *-e* (adj.)...all, every
Opera, *-ae*, f....work, labour, care
Operio, *-ui*, *-tum*, *-ire*...to cover
Opes, *-um*, f. pl....resources, wealth
Oppidum, *-i*, n....town
Oppleo, *-evi*, *-etum*, *-ere*...to fill up
Opprimo, *-pressi*, *-pressum*, *-primĕre*...to overwhelm, to suppress
Oppugno, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to attack
Optimus, *-a*, *-um* (adj., superl. of *bonus*, good)...best

Orno, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to adorn, to equip
Oro, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to pray
Ostendo, *-di*, *-tum*, *-dĕre*...to show, to make clear
Otium, *-ii*, n....ease, peace, repose

P

Padus, *-i*, m....Po, large river in the North of Italy
Paene (adv.)...almost, nearly
Palam (adv.)...openly. *Palam facere*, to disclose
Par, *păris* (adj.) ..equal, like
Parco, *peperci*, *parsum*, *parcĕre*...to spare (governs Dative)
Pareo, *-ui*, *-itum*, *-ere*...to obey (governs Dative)
Paro, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to prepare, to make ready, to obtain
Parvus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...little
Passus, *-us*, m....a pace (five Roman feet)
Patefacio, *-feci*, *-factum*, *-facĕre*...to disclose, to open, to make clear
Pater, *-ris*, m....father
Paternus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...paternal, belonging to one's father
Patria, *-ae*, f....fatherland
Pauci, *-ae*, *-a* (adj.)...a few, some
Paulum (adv.)...a little. *Paulo*...by a little. *Paulo ante*, a little before
Paulus, *-i*, m....Paulus, a Roman name
Pax, *pacis*, f....peace
Pecunia, *-ae*, f....money
Pedester, *-ris*, *-re* (adj.)...on foot. *Pedestres copiae*, infantry
Pello, *pepuli*, *pulsum*, *pellere*...to drive, to expel, to banish, to defeat
Pendo, *pependi*, *pensum*, *pendĕre*...to weigh out, to pay
Penes (prep., with Acc.)...in the power of
Per (prep., with Acc. of place)...through; also by means of
Perago, *-ēgi*, *-actum*, *-agĕre*...to carry out, to complete
Perduco, *-duxi*, *-ductum*, *-ducĕre*...to lead through
Pereo, *-ii*, *-itum*, *-ire*...to perish, to die
Perfungor, *-functus*, *-fungi*...to discharge
Pergamenus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...of or belonging to Pergamum, town of Mysia in Asia
Periculum, *-i*, n....danger
Peritus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...skilled in (with Gen.)
Permitto, *-misi*, *-missum*, *-mittere*...to permit, to entrust (something to somebody, Acc. and Dat.)

Perpetuus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...perpetual
Persequor, *-secūtus*, *-sequi*...to chase, to attack, to follow up
Persuadeo, *-suasi*, *-suasum*, *-suadere*...to persuade
Perterreo, *-ui*, *-itum*, *-ere*...to terrify thoroughly, to frighten
Pertinacia, *-ae*, f....persistence, obstinacy, stubbornness
Pertineo, *-ui*, ——, *-ere*...to tend towards. *Quae ad irridendum pertinebant*, what tended towards jeering
Pervenio, *-veni*, *-ventum*, *-venire*...to arrive at, to reach
Perverto, *-verti*, *-versum*, *-vertĕre*...to corrupt, to ruin
Peto, *-ivi*, *-itum*, *-ere*...to ask (Acc. and Abl.); to make for, to attack
Philippus, *-i*, m....Philip
Plumbum, *-i*, n....lead
Plurimus, *-a*, *-um* (adj., superl. of *multus*)...most; (pl.) very many
Plus, *pluris* (adj., pl. *plures*, *plura*, *plurium*, *pluribus*)...more
Poena, *-ae*, f....penalty, punishment
Poenicus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...Punic, Carthaginian
Poenus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...Carthaginian
Poēta, *-ae*, m....poet
Polliceor, *-itus*, *-eri*...to promise
Pompeius, *-i*, m....Pompey, a Roman name
Pono, *posui*, *positum*, *ponere*...to place
Pontus, *-i*, m....the Black Sea
Populus, *-i*, m....the people
Porto, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to carry
Possum, *potui*, *posse*...to be able
Post (prep., with Acc.)...after
Postea (adv.)...afterwards, after that
Posteaquam (conj.)...after that, after
Posterus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...following, next. *Postremo* (adv.)...at last
Postquam (conj.)...after that, after
Postridie (adv.)...on the day after, on the next day
Postulo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to demand
Potens, *-tis* (adj.)...powerful
Potestas, *-tatis*, f....power
Potissimum (superl. adv.)...especially, chiefly
Potius (adv.)...rather
Praebeo, *-ui*, *-itum*, *-ere*...to furnish, to supply
Praeceptum, *-i*, n....precept, advice, warning, command
Praecipio, *-cepi*, *-ceptum*, *-cipĕre*...to enjoin upon, to command
Praefectus, *-i*, m....commander, governor

Praemium, *-ii*, n....reward
Praenomen, *-inis*, n....the first name of a Roman (like our Christian name)
Praesens, *-tis* (adj.)...present
Praesidium, *-ii*, n....defence, help, garrison; (pl.) forces
Praesto, *-stiti*, *-stitum* or *-statum*, *-stare*...to excel
Praesum, *-fui*, *-esse*...to be at the head of, to be in command
Praeter (prep., with Acc.)...besides
Praeterea (adv.)...besides
Praetor, *-oris*, m....Praetor (*see* Note on Passage No. 13.)
Premo, *pressi*, *pressum*, *premĕre*...to press, to press hard
Prima luce (adv.)...at dawn
Primo (adv.)...at first
Primus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...first
Princeps, *-ipis* (adj. or noun)...chief; first
Pristinus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...former, early
Prinsquam (conj.)...before that, before
Prodo, *-didi*, *-ditum*, *-dĕre*.. to hand down; to betray
Produco, *-duxi*, *-ductum*, *-ducĕre*...to bring forward, to lead forth
Proelium, *-ii*, n....battle
Profecto (adv.)...assuredly
Proficiscor, *-fectus*, *-ficisci* (depon. verb)...to set out, to depart
Profiteor, *-fessus*, *-fiteri*...to confess, to profess
Profligo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to overthrow, to conquer
Profugio, *-fugi*, *-fugitum*, *-fugĕre*...to flee
Prohibeo, *-ui*, *-itum*, *-ere*...to prevent, to hinder
Propago, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to extend
Propatulum, *-i*, n....an open place before the house, outer court
Prope (adv.)...almost, near
Propere (adv.)...hastily
Propinquus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...neighbouring, near
Propius (adv., with Dat.)...nearer. *Propius Tiberi*, nearer the Tiber
Propter (prep., with Acc.)...on account of
Prospicio, *-spexi*, *-spectum*, *-spicere*...to spy, to look out and see
Provideo, *-vidi*, *-visum*, *-videre*...to provide, to take thought beforehand
-a, *-um* (adj.)...foreseeing, prudent
, f....province
-um (adj.)...nearest, next
, f....prudence, forethought, skill

Prusia, *-ae*, m....Prusia (Nominative sometimes *Prusias*)
Publice (adv.)...in the name of the State
Publico, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to confiscate, to make public property
Publicus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...belonging to the State, public
Publius, *-ii*, m....Publius, a Roman name
Puerulus, *-i*, m....little boy
Pugio, *-onis*, m....dagger
Pugna, *-ae*, f....battle, fight
Pugno, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to fight
Pulcher -ra, *-rum* (adj.)...beautiful
Punicus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...Carthaginian. (Same as *Poenicus*)
Puppis, *-is*, f....stern (of a ship)
Puto, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to think, to suppose (but "thinking" = *ratus*, not *putans*)

Q

Qua (adv.)...where, by which way
Quacunque (adv.)...wheresoever
Quaero, *quaesīvi*, *quaesītum*, *quaerĕre*...to ask (a question)
Quam, Acc. fem. sing. of *Qui*, *quae*, *quod*, which
Quam (adv. with adj.)...how. *Tam . . . quam*, so . . . as; (with superl.) as . . . as possible. *Quam plurimi*, as many as possible
Quamdiu (adv.,)...how long, as long as
Quantus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...how great
Quare (conj.)...wherefore, why, for which reason
-que...and
Qui, *quae*, *quod* (rel. pron.)...who, which, etc. *Qua* is used for *quae* = any
Quidem (adv.)...indeed, even
Quin (conj.)...but that. (See Lesson XXVII.)
Quinquies (numeral adverb)...five times
Quintius, *-ii*, m....Quintius, a Roman name
Quintus, *-i*, m....Quintus, a Roman name
Quis, m., f., *quid*, n. (inter. pron.)...who? which? also, after *si*, *ne* = anyone, anything. (In other cases this is like *qui*)
Quisnam, *quidnam*...who in the world. (*Quis* and *nam*)
Quod (conj.)...because
Quod (rel. pron., neut.)...which. *Quod nisi*, but unless (as to whi if not)
Quoque (adv.)...also

Quot (indeclinable pron.)...how many
Quotannis (adv.)...every year
Quotienscumque (adv.)...as often as ever
Quum (conj.)...when, since. (Also written *cum*)

R

Ratio, *-onis*, f....reason, plan, method
Recipio, *-cepi*, *-ceptum*, *-cipĕre*...to recover, to receive back. *Se recipere*, to retreat
Recupero, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to recover
Recuso, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to refuse
Reddo, *reddidi*, *redditum*, *reddere*...to give back, to restore
Redeo, *-ii*, *-itum*, *-ire*...to return
Reficio, *-feci*, *-fectum*, *-ficĕre*...to repair, to restore, to refresh
Regnum, *-i*, n....kingdom
Regulus, *-i*, m....Regulus, a famous Roman
Relinquo, *-liqui*, *-lictum*, *-linquĕre*...to leave behind, to forsake
Reliquus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...left, remaining
Remitto, *-misi*, *-missum*, *-mittere*...to send back
Removeo, *-movi*, *-motum*, *-movere*...to remove, to keep away (trans.)
Renovo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to renew
Renuntio, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to bring back word
Reor, *ratus*, *reri* (deponent vb.)...to think. *Ratus*, thinking
Repente (adv.)...suddenly
Repentīnus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...sudden
Reperio, *reppĕri* (*rĕperi*), *repertum*, *reperire*...to find, to discover
Repo, *repsi*, *reptum*, *repere*...to creep, to crawl
Repono, *-posui*, *-positum*, *-ponere*...to put back, to lay up for safety
Res, *rei*, f....a thing, affair, matter
Rescisco, *-scivi*, *-scitum*, *-sciscere*...to get to know, to ascertain
Resisto, *-stiti*, *-stitum*, *-sistere*...to resist (with Dat. case)
Respondeo, *-spondi*, *-sponsum*, *-spondere*...to reply
Responsum, *-i*, n....a reply
Respublica, *reipublicae*, f....the State. (*Res* and *publica*)
Restituo, *-ui*, *-utum*, *-ĕre*...to restore, to give back
Retineo, *-inui*, *-entum*, *-inere*...to hold back; to retain, to preserve
Revertor, *-versus*, *-verti*...to return
Revoco, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to recall
Rex, *regis*, m....king
Rhodănus, *-i*, m....the river Rhône, in France

Risus, *-us*, m....laughter
Robustus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...strong, vigorous
Rogo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to ask
Roma, *-ae*, f....Rome, capital of Italy and of Roman Empire
Romānus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...Roman
Ruber, *-ra*, *-rum* (adj.)...red
Rufus, *-i*, m....Rufus, a Roman name
Rursus (adv.)...again

S

Sacrifico, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to sacrifice, (trans. and intrans.) to offer up
Saepe (adv.)...often
Saltus, *-us*, m....defile, pass
Salus, *-ūtis*, f....safety
Sapiens, *-tis* (adj.)...wise
Sapientia, *-ae*, f....wisdom
Sarmenta, *-orum*, n. pl....twigs, brushwood
Satis (adv.)...enough, sufficient
Saucius, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...wounded
Scapha, *-ae*, f....a light rowing boat
Scilicet (adv.)...doubtless, of course. (*Scire licet*, it is permitted to know, you may know)
Scio, *scivi*, *scitum*, *scire*...to know
Scipio, *-onis*, m....Scipio, a famous Roman
Scribo, *scripsi*, *scriptum*, *scribĕre*...to write
Se, *sese* (Acc. of the reflexive pronoun)...himself, etc. (See Lesson XIV.)
Secundus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...second; favourable
Sed (conj.)...but. *Sed etiam*, but also
Segrego, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to separate
Seiungo, *-iunxi*, *-iunctum*, *-iungĕre*...to separate
Semper (adv.)...always
Senatus, *-us*, m....senate (the supreme council of nobles at Rome). *Senatum dare*, to give audience of the senate. *Senatusconsultum*, a decree of the senate
Sententia, *-ae*, f....opinion, vote, decision
Septuagesimus, *-a*, *-um* (ordinal numeral adj.)...seventieth
Serpens, *-tis*, f....serpent
Servilius, *-ii*, m....Servilius, a Roman name

Servulus, *-i*, m....a little slave
Servus, *-i*, m....a slave
Si (conj.)...if
Sic (adv.)...so
Sicilia, *-ae*, f....Sicily
Signum, *-i*, n....signal; standard
Simul (adv.)...at the same time. *Simul atque*, as soon as
Simulo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to pretend
Sine (prep., with Abl. case)...without
Societas, *-atis*, f....alliance
Solum (adv.)...only
Solus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...alone
Solvo, *solvi*, *solutum*, *solvĕre*...to loosen
Specto, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to look at, to behold
Spero, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to hope, to hope for
Spes, *spei*, f....hope
Statim (adv.)...at once
Statua, *-ae*, f....statue
Statuo, *-ui*, *-utum*, *-ĕre*...to resolve, to determine; to establish
Sto, *stĕti*, *stătum*, *stāre*...to stand
Studium, *-ii*, n....zeal, desire, eagerness
Stulte (adv.)...foolishly
Subigo, *-egi*, *-actum*, *-igĕre*...to subdue
Subito (adv.)...suddenly
Succumbo, *-cubui*, *-cubitum*, *-cumbĕre*...to lie prostrate
Sufficio, *-feci*, *-fectum*, *-ficere*...to choose in the place of any one
Sulpicius, *-ii*, m....Sulpicius, a Roman name
Sum, *fui*, *esse*...to be
Summa, *-ae*, f....the sum, the whole amount. *Summa imperii*, the supreme authority
Summus, *-a*, *-um* (adj., superl. degree of *superus*)...highest, greatest
Sumo, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*, *sumere*...to take
Sumptus, *-us*, m....expense
Sunt (third pers. plur. Pres. Indic. of *sum*)...they are
Superior, *-us* (compar. of *superus*)...(1) higher; (2) victorious; (3) former
Supero, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to overcome, to defeat
Supra (adv.)...above. Also Prep., with Acc. case
Suscipio, *-cepi*, *-ceptum*, *-cipĕre*...to undertake
Suspicio, *-spexi*, *-spectum*, *-spicĕre*...to look up at, to admire
Sustineo, *-inui*, *-entum*, *-inere*...to endure, to sustain

Tres, *tria* (numeral adj.)...three
Triennium, *-ii*, n....period of three years
Tum (adv.)...then, at that time *Tum quidem* (adv.)...then indeed, just then
Tuus, *-a*, *-um*...thy or thine, your

U

Ubi (conj.)...where; when
Ullus, *-a*, *-um* (Gen. *ullius*)...any (after a negative)
Umbrosus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...shady
Unde (conj.)...whence
Undique (adv.)...from every side, on every side
Universus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...whole, entire; (pl.) all together
Unquam (adv.)...ever. (When "ever" equals "always" use *semper*)
Unus, *-a*, *-um* (numeral adj.)...one
Urbs, *urbis*, f....city
Usque (adv.)....ever, right on. *Usque ad*, right up to
Usus, *-us*, m....use, experience. *Usu venire*, to actually happen
Ut (adv.)...as; (conj.) when; so that, in order that; that
Uter, *utra*, *utrum*...which of two?
Uterque, *utraque*, *utrumque*...each of two
Utica, *-ae*, f....Utica, town in Africa
Utor, *usus*, *uti*...to use (with Ablative case)
Utpote (adv.)...namely, as being
Utrobīque (adv.)...on both sides, on both elements (sea and land)

V

Valens, *-tis* (partic. pres. of *valeo*)...strong. *Valentissimus* (superl.), strongest
Valeo, *-ui*, ——, *-ere*...to be strong
Valetudo, *-inis*, f....health; bad health, illness
Vallum, *-i*, n....rampart
Varius, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...manifold, various
Vas, *vasis*, n....vessel, dish. (Plur., *vasa*, *-orum*, *-is*, irregular)
Vectīgal, *-alis*, n....tax, tribute
Veho, *vexi*, *vectum*, *vehere*...to carry
Vel . . . *vel*, either . . . or. *Vel*...even
Velum, *-i*, n....sail
Velut (adv.)...even as, as

Venenatus, *-a*, *-um* (partic. of *veneno*)...poisoned
Veneno, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to poison
Venenum, *-i*, n....poison
Venio, *veni*, *ventum*, *venire*...to come
Ventus, *-i*, m....the wind
Venusia, *-ae*, f....Venusia, town in Italy
Verbum, *-i*, n....word
Vereor, *-itus*, *-eri*...to fear; to reverence
Verto, *verti*, *versum*, *vertĕre*...to turn
Verus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...true
Vester, *-ra*, *-rum* (adj.)...your own, your (referring to more than one)
Vetustus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...old
Vexo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to harass
Vicesimus, *-a*, *-um* (ordinal numeral adj.)...twentieth
Victoria, *-ae*, f....victory
Video, *vidi*, *visum*, *videre*...to see. *Videtur*, it seems
Vinco, *vici*, *victum*, *vincere*...to conquer
Violo, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to break, to violate. *Violare legem*, to break a law
Vir, *-i*, m....a man
Virtus, *-utis*, f....bravery, manliness, virtue
Vis (Acc. *vim*, Abl. *vi*; Plur, *vires*, *virium*, *viribus*), f....strength
Visus, *-us*, m....sight, appearance
Vita, *-ae*, f....life. (Do not use plural in this sense; *vitae* means "biographies")
Vito, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to avoid
Vivo, *vixi*, *victum*, *vivere*...to live
Vivus, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...living, alive
Vix (adv.)...scarcely
Volo, *volui*, *velle*...to be willing, to wish
Voluntas, *-atis*, f....will, wish, desire

Z

Zama, *-ae*, f....Zama, a town in Africa, near Carthage

THE ABERDEEN UNIVERSITY PRESS LIMITED